

# **Linux From Scratch**

**Version 6.1**

**Gerard Beekmans**

# Linux From Scratch: Version 6.1

by Gerard Beekmans

Copyright © 1999–2005 Gerard Beekmans

Copyright (c) 1999–2005, Gerard Beekmans

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions in any form must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer
- Neither the name of “Linux From Scratch” nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this material without specific prior written permission
- Any material derived from Linux From Scratch must contain a reference to the “Linux From Scratch” project

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

# Table of Contents

Preface .....	vii
1. Foreword .....	vii
2. Audience .....	viii
3. Prerequisites .....	x
4. Host System Requirements .....	xi
5. Typography .....	xii
6. Structure .....	xiii
7. Errata .....	xiv
I. Introduction .....	15
1. Introduction .....	16
1.1. How to Build an LFS System .....	16
1.2. Changelog .....	17
1.3. Resources .....	26
1.4. Help .....	27
2. Preparing a New Partition .....	30
2.1. Introduction .....	30
2.2. Creating a New Partition .....	31
2.3. Creating a File System on the Partition .....	32
2.4. Mounting the New Partition .....	33
II. Preparing for the Build .....	34
3. Packages and Patches .....	35
3.1. Introduction .....	35
3.2. All Packages .....	36
3.3. Needed Patches .....	40
4. Final Preparations .....	42
4.1. About \$LFS .....	42
4.2. Creating the \$LFS/tools Directory .....	43
4.3. Adding the LFS User .....	44
4.4. Setting Up the Environment .....	45
4.5. About SBUs .....	47
4.6. About the Test Suites .....	48
5. Constructing a Temporary System .....	49
5.1. Introduction .....	49
5.2. Toolchain Technical Notes .....	50
5.3. Binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2 - Pass 1 .....	53
5.4. GCC-3.4.3 - Pass 1 .....	55
5.5. Linux-Libc-Headers-2.6.11.2 .....	57
5.6. Glibc-2.3.4 .....	58
5.7. Adjusting the Toolchain .....	61
5.8. Tcl-8.4.9 .....	63
5.9. Expect-5.43.0 .....	65
5.10. DejaGNU-1.4.4 .....	67
5.11. GCC-3.4.3 - Pass 2 .....	68
5.12. Binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2 - Pass 2 .....	71

5.13. Gawk-3.1.4 .....	73
5.14. Coreutils-5.2.1 .....	74
5.15. Bzip2-1.0.3 .....	75
5.16. Gzip-1.3.5 .....	76
5.17. Diffutils-2.8.1 .....	77
5.18. Findutils-4.2.23 .....	78
5.19. Make-3.80 .....	79
5.20. Grep-2.5.1a .....	80
5.21. Sed-4.1.4 .....	81
5.22. Gettext-0.14.3 .....	82
5.23. Ncurses-5.4 .....	83
5.24. Patch-2.5.4 .....	84
5.25. Tar-1.15.1 .....	85
5.26. Texinfo-4.8 .....	86
5.27. Bash-3.0 .....	87
5.28. M4-1.4.3 .....	88
5.29. Bison-2.0 .....	89
5.30. Flex-2.5.31 .....	90
5.31. Util-linux-2.12q .....	91
5.32. Perl-5.8.6 .....	92
5.33. Stripping .....	93
III. Building the LFS System .....	94
6. Installing Basic System Software .....	95
6.1. Introduction .....	95
6.2. Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems .....	96
6.3. Entering the Chroot Environment .....	97
6.4. Changing Ownership .....	98
6.5. Creating Directories .....	99
6.6. Creating Essential Symlinks .....	100
6.7. Creating the passwd, group, and log Files .....	101
6.8. Populating /dev .....	103
6.9. Linux-Libc-Headers-2.6.11.2 .....	105
6.10. Man-pages-2.01 .....	106
6.11. Glibc-2.3.4 .....	107
6.12. Re-adjusting the Toolchain .....	113
6.13. Binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2 .....	115
6.14. GCC-3.4.3 .....	118
6.15. Coreutils-5.2.1 .....	121
6.16. Zlib-1.2.2 .....	126
6.17. Mktmp-1.5 .....	128
6.18. Iana-Etc-1.04 .....	129
6.19. Findutils-4.2.23 .....	130
6.20. Gawk-3.1.4 .....	131
6.21. Ncurses-5.4 .....	132
6.22. Readline-5.0 .....	134
6.23. Vim-6.3 .....	136
6.24. M4-1.4.3 .....	139
6.25. Bison-2.0 .....	140
6.26. Less-382 .....	141

6.27. Groff-1.19.1 .....	142
6.28. Sed-4.1.4 .....	145
6.29. Flex-2.5.31 .....	146
6.30. Gettext-0.14.3 .....	148
6.31. Inetutils-1.4.2 .....	150
6.32. IPRoute2-2.6.11-050330 .....	152
6.33. Perl-5.8.6 .....	154
6.34. Texinfo-4.8 .....	156
6.35. Autoconf-2.59 .....	158
6.36. Automake-1.9.5 .....	160
6.37. Bash-3.0 .....	162
6.38. File-4.13 .....	164
6.39. Libtool-1.5.14 .....	165
6.40. Bzip2-1.0.3 .....	166
6.41. Diffutils-2.8.1 .....	168
6.42. Kbd-1.12 .....	169
6.43. E2fsprogs-1.37 .....	171
6.44. Grep-2.5.1a .....	174
6.45. GRUB-0.96 .....	175
6.46. Gzip-1.3.5 .....	177
6.47. Hotplug-2004_09_23 .....	179
6.48. Man-1.5p .....	181
6.49. Make-3.80 .....	183
6.50. Module-Init-Tools-3.1 .....	184
6.51. Patch-2.5.4 .....	186
6.52. Procs-3.2.5 .....	187
6.53. Psmisc-21.6 .....	189
6.54. Shadow-4.0.9 .....	191
6.55. Sysklogd-1.4.1 .....	194
6.56. Sysvinit-2.86 .....	196
6.57. Tar-1.15.1 .....	199
6.58. Udev-056 .....	200
6.59. Util-linux-2.12q .....	202
6.60. About Debugging Symbols .....	206
6.61. Stripping Again .....	207
6.62. Cleaning Up .....	208
7. Setting Up System Bootscripts .....	209
7.1. Introduction .....	209
7.2. LFS-Bootscripts-3.2.1 .....	210
7.3. How Do These Bootscripts Work? .....	212
7.4. Device and Module Handling on an LFS System .....	214
7.5. Configuring the setclock Script .....	217
7.6. Configuring the Linux Console .....	218
7.7. Configuring the sysklogd script .....	220
7.8. Creating the /etc/inputrc File .....	221
7.9. The Bash Shell Startup Files .....	223
7.10. Configuring the localnet Script .....	225
7.11. Creating the /etc/hosts File .....	226
7.12. Configuring the network Script .....	227

8. Making the LFS System Bootable .....	229
8.1. Introduction .....	229
8.2. Creating the /etc/fstab File .....	230
8.3. Linux-2.6.11.12 .....	231
8.4. Making the LFS System Bootable .....	234
9. The End .....	236
9.1. The End .....	236
9.2. Get Counted .....	237
9.3. Rebooting the System .....	238
9.4. What Now? .....	239
IV. Appendices .....	240
A. Acronyms and Terms .....	241
B. Acknowledgments .....	244
Index .....	247

# Preface

## 1. Foreword

My adventures in Linux began in 1998 when I downloaded and installed my first distribution. After working with it for a while, I discovered issues I definitely would have liked to see improved upon. For example, I didn't like the arrangement of the bootscripts or the way programs were configured by default. I tried a number of alternative distributions to address these issues, yet each had its pros and cons. Finally, I realized that if I wanted full satisfaction from my Linux system, I would have to build my own from scratch.

What does this mean? I resolved not to use pre-compiled packages of any kind, nor CD-ROMs or boot disks that would install basic utilities. I would use my current Linux system to develop my own customized system. This “perfect” Linux system would then have the strengths of various systems without their associated weaknesses. In the beginning, the idea was rather daunting, but I remained committed to the idea that a system could be built that would conform to my needs and desires rather than to a standard that just did not fit what I was looking for.

After sorting through issues such as circular dependencies and compile-time errors, I created a custom-built Linux system that was fully operational and suitable to individual needs. This process also allowed me to create compact and streamlined Linux systems which are faster and take up less space than traditional operating systems. I called this system a Linux From Scratch system, or an LFS system for short.

As I shared my goals and experiences with other members of the Linux community, it became apparent that there was sustained interest in the ideas set forth in my Linux adventures. Such custom-built LFS systems serve not only to meet user specifications and requirements, but also serve as an ideal learning opportunity for programmers and system administrators to enhance their Linux skills. Out of this broadened interest, the Linux From Scratch Project was born.

This *Linux From Scratch* book provides readers with the background and instruction to design and build custom Linux systems. This book highlights the Linux from Scratch project and the benefits of using this system. Users can dictate all aspects of their system, including directory layout, script setup, and security. The resulting system will be compiled completely from the source code, and the user will be able to specify where, why, and how programs are installed. This book allows readers to fully customize Linux systems to their own needs and allows users more control over their system.

I hope you will have a great time working on your own LFS system, and enjoy the numerous benefits of having a system that is truly *your own*.

--

Gerard Beekmans  
gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

## 2. Audience

There are many reasons why somebody would want to read this book. The principal reason is to install a Linux system from the source code. A question many people raise is, “why go through all the hassle of manually building a Linux system from scratch when you can just download and install an existing one?” That is a good question and is the impetus for this section of the book.

One important reason for LFS's existence is to help people learn how a Linux system works from the inside out. Building an LFS system helps demonstrate what makes Linux tick, and how things work together and depend on each other. One of the best things that this learning experience provides is the ability to customize Linux to your own tastes and needs.

A key benefit of LFS is that it allows users to have more control over the system without relying on someone else's Linux implementation. With LFS, *you* are in the driver's seat and dictate every aspect of the system, such as the directory layout and bootscript setup. You also dictate where, why, and how programs are installed.

Another benefit of LFS is the ability to create a very compact Linux system. When installing a regular distribution, one is often forced to include several programs which are probably never used. These programs waste disk space, or worse, CPU cycles. It is not difficult to build an LFS system of less than 100 megabytes (MB), which is substantially smaller than the majority of existing installations. Does this still sound like a lot of space? A few of us have been working on creating a very small embedded LFS system. We successfully built a system that was specialized to run the Apache web server with approximately 8MB of disk space used. Further stripping could bring this down to 5 MB or less. Try that with a regular distribution! This is only one of the many benefits of designing your own Linux implementation.

We could compare Linux distributions to a hamburger purchased at a fast-food restaurant—you have no idea what might be in what you are eating. LFS, on the other hand, does not give you a hamburger. Rather, LFS provides the recipe to make the exact hamburger desired. This allows users to review the recipe, omit unwanted ingredients, and add your own ingredients to enhance the flavor of the burger. When you are satisfied with the recipe, move on to preparing it. It can be made to exact specifications—broil it, bake it, deep-fry it, or barbecue it.

Another analogy that we can use is that of comparing LFS with a finished house. LFS provides the skeletal plan of a house, but it is up to you to build it. LFS maintains the freedom to adjust plans throughout the process, customizing it to the user's needs and preferences.

An additional advantage of a custom built Linux system is security. By compiling the entire system from source code, you are empowered to audit everything and apply all the security patches desired. It is no longer necessary to wait for somebody else to compile binary packages that fix a security hole. Unless you examine the patch and implement it yourself, you have no guarantee that the new binary package was built correctly and adequately fixes the problem.

The goal of Linux From Scratch is to build a complete and usable foundation-level system. Readers who do not wish to build their own Linux system from scratch may not benefit from the information in this book. If you only want to know what happens while the computer boots, we recommend the “From Power Up To Bash Prompt” HOWTO located at <http://axiom.anu.edu.au/~okeefe/p2b/> or on The Linux Documentation Project's (TLDP) website at <http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/From-PowerUp-To-Bash-Prompt-HOWTO.html>. The HOWTO builds a system which is similar to that of this book, but it focuses strictly on creating a system capable of booting to a BASH prompt. Consider your objective. If you wish to build a Linux system while learning along the way, then this book is your best choice.



There are too many good reasons to build your own LFS system to list them all here. This section is only the tip of the iceberg. As you continue in your LFS experience, you will find the power that information and knowledge truly bring.

## 3. Prerequisites

This book assumes that the reader has a reasonable knowledge of using and installing Linux software. Before building an LFS system, we recommend reading the following HOWTOs:

- Software-Building-HOWTO  
*<http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/Software-Building-HOWTO.html>*  
This is a comprehensive guide to building and installing “generic” Unix software distributions under Linux.
- The Linux Users' Guide  
*<http://www.linuxhq.com/guides/LUG/guide.html>*  
This guide covers the usage of assorted Linux software.
- The Essential Pre-Reading Hint  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/essential\\_prereading.txt](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/essential_prereading.txt)*

This is an LFS Hint written specifically for users new to Linux. It includes a list of links to excellent sources of information on a wide range of topics. Anyone attempting to install LFS should have an understanding of many of the topics in this hint.

## 4. Host System Requirements

The host must be running at least a 2.6.2 kernel compiled with GCC-3.0 or higher. There are two main reasons for this requirement. First, the Native POSIX Threading Library (NPTL) test suite will segfault if the host's kernel has not been compiled with GCC-3.0 or a later version. Second, the 2.6.2 or later version of the kernel is required for the use of Udev. Udev creates devices dynamically by reading from the `sysfs` file system. However, support for this filesystem has only recently been implemented in most of the kernel drivers. We must be sure that all critical system devices get created properly.

In order to determine whether the host kernel meets the requirements outlined above, run the following command:

```
cat /proc/version
```

This will produce output similar to:

```
Linux version 2.6.2 (user@host) (gcc version 3.4.0) #1  
Tue Apr 20 21:22:18 GMT 2004
```

If the results of the above command do not state that the host kernel is either 2.6.2 (or later), or that it was not compiled using a GCC-3.0 (or later) compiler, one will need to be installed. There are two methods you can take to solve this. First, see if your Linux vendor provides a 2.6.2 (or later) kernel package. If so, you may wish to install it. If your vendor doesn't offer a 2.6.2 (or later) kernel package, or you would prefer not to install it, then you can compile a 2.6 kernel yourself. Instructions for compiling the kernel and configuring the boot loader (assuming the host uses GRUB) are located in Chapter 8. This second option can also be seen as a gauge of your current Linux skills. If this second requirement is too steep, then the LFS book will not likely be much use to you at this time.

## 5. Typography

To make things easier to follow, there are a few typographical conventions used throughout this book. This section contains some examples of the typographical format found throughout Linux From Scratch.

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

This form of text is designed to be typed exactly as seen unless otherwise noted in the surrounding text. It is also used in the explanation sections to identify which of the commands is being referenced.

```
install-info: unknown option '--dir-file=/mnt/lfs/usr/info/dir'
```

This form of text (fixed-width text) shows screen output, probably as the result of commands issued. This format is also used to show filenames, such as `/etc/ld.so.conf`.

### *Emphasis*

This form of text is used for several purposes in the book. Its main purpose is to emphasize important points or items.

<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/>

This format is used for hyperlinks both within the LFS community and to external pages. It includes HOWTOs, download locations, and websites.

```
cat > $LFS/etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:
.....
EOF
```

This format is used when creating configuration files. The first command tells the system to create the file `$LFS/etc/group` from whatever is typed on the following lines until the sequence end of file (EOF) is encountered. Therefore, this entire section is generally typed as seen.

*[REPLACED TEXT]*

This format is used to encapsulate text that is not to be typed as seen or copied-and-pasted.

`passwd(5)`

This format is used to refer to a specific manual page (hereinafter referred to simply as a “man” page). The number inside parentheses indicates a specific section inside of **man**. For example, **passwd** has two man pages. Per LFS installation instructions, those two man pages will be located at `/usr/share/man/man1/passwd.1` and `/usr/share/man/man5/passwd.5`. Both man pages have different information in them. When the book uses `passwd(5)` it is specifically referring to `/usr/share/man/man5/passwd.5`. **man passwd** will print the first man page it finds that matches “passwd”, which will be `/usr/share/man/man1/passwd.1`. For this example, you will need to run **man 5 passwd** in order to read the specific page being referred to. It should be noted that most man pages do not have duplicate page names in different sections. Therefore, **man [program name]** is generally sufficient.

## 6. Structure

This book is divided into the following parts.

### 6.1. Part I - Introduction

Part I explains a few important notes on how to proceed with the LFS installation. This section also provides meta-information about the book.

### 6.2. Part II - Preparing for the Build

Part II describes how to prepare for the building process—making a partition, downloading the packages, and compiling temporary tools.

### 6.3. Part III - Building the LFS System

Part III guides the reader through the building of the LFS system—compiling and installing all the packages one by one, setting up the boot scripts, and installing the kernel. The resulting Linux system is the foundation on which other software can be built to expand the system as desired. At the end of this book, there is an easy to use reference listing all of the programs, libraries, and important files that have been installed.

## 7. Errata

The software used to create an LFS system is constantly being updated and enhanced. Security warnings and bug fixes may become available after the LFS book has been released. To check whether the package versions or instructions in this release of LFS need any modifications to accomodate security vulnerabilities or other bug fixes, please visit <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/errata/6.1/> before proceeding with your build. You should note any changes shown and apply them to the relevant section of the book as you progress with building the LFS system.

# Part I. Introduction

# Chapter 1. Introduction

## 1.1. How to Build an LFS System

The LFS system will be built by using a previously installed Linux distribution (such as Debian, Mandrake, Red Hat, or SuSE). This existing Linux system (the host) will be used as a starting point to provide necessary programs, including a compiler, linker, and shell, to build the new system. Select the “development” option during the distribution installation to be able to access these tools.

As an alternative to installing an entire separate distribution onto your machine, you may wish to use the Linux From Scratch LiveCD. The CD works well as a host system, providing all the tools you need to successfully follow the instructions in this book. Additionally, it contains all the source packages, patches and a copy of this book. So once you have the CD, no network connection or additional downloads are necessary. For more information about the LFS LiveCD or to download a copy, visit <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/livecd/>.

Chapter 2 of this book describes how to create a new Linux native partition and file system, the place where the new LFS system will be compiled and installed. Chapter 3 explains which packages and patches need to be downloaded to build an LFS system and how to store them on the new file system. Chapter 4 discusses the setup for an appropriate working environment. Please read Chapter 4 carefully as it explains several important issues the developer should be aware of before beginning to work through Chapter 5 and beyond.

Chapter 5 explains the installation of a number of packages that will form the basic development suite (or toolchain) which is used to build the actual system in Chapter 6. Some of these packages are needed to resolve circular dependencies—for example, to compile a compiler, you need a compiler.

Chapter 5 also shows the user how to build a first pass of the toolchain, including Binutils and GCC (first pass basically means these two core packages will be re-installed a second time). The next step is to build Glibc, the C library. Glibc will be compiled by the toolchain programs built in the first pass. Then, a second pass of the toolchain will be built. This time, the toolchain will be dynamically linked against the newly built Glibc. The remaining Chapter 5 packages are built using this second pass toolchain. When this is done, the LFS installation process will no longer depend on the host distribution, with the exception of the running kernel.

While this may initially seem like a lot of work to isolate the new system from the host distribution, a full technical explanation is provided at the beginning of Chapter 5.

In Chapter 6, the full LFS system is built. The **chroot** (change root) program is used to enter a virtual environment and start a new shell whose root directory will be set to the LFS partition. This is very similar to rebooting and instructing the kernel to mount the LFS partition as the root partition. The system does not actually reboot, but instead **chroot**'s because creating a bootable system requires additional work which is not necessary just yet. The major advantage is that “chrooting” allows the builder to continue using the host while LFS is being built. While waiting for package compilation to complete, a user can switch to a different virtual console (VC) or X desktop and continue using the computer as normal.

To finish the installation, the LFS-Bootscripts are set up in Chapter 7, and the kernel and boot loader are set up in Chapter 8. Chapter 9 contains information on furthering the LFS experience beyond this book. After the steps in this book have been implemented, the computer will be ready to reboot into the new LFS system.

This is the process in a nutshell. Detailed information on each step is discussed in the following chapters and package descriptions. Items that may seem complicated will be clarified, and everything will fall into place as the reader embarks on the LFS adventure.



## 1.2. Changelog

This is version 6.1 of the Linux From Scratch book, dated July 9, 2005. If this book is more than six months old, a newer and better version is probably already available. To find out, please check one of the mirrors via <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/>.

Below is a list of changes made since the previous release of the book. First a summary, then a detailed log.

- Upgraded to:
  - Automake 1.9.5
  - Binutils 2.15.94.0.2.2
  - Bison 2.0
  - Bzip2 1.0.3
  - E2fsprogs 1.37
  - Expect 5.43.0
  - File 4.13
  - Findutils 4.2.23
  - GCC 3.4.3
  - Gettext 0.14.2
  - Glibc 2.3.4
  - Grep 2.5.1a
  - Grub 0.96
  - Iana-Etc 1.04
  - Iproute2 2.6.11-050330
  - LFS-Bootscripts 3.2.1
  - Libtool 1.5.14
  - Linux 2.6.11.12
  - Linux-libc-headers 2.6.11.2
  - M4 1.4.3
  - Man 1.5p
  - Man-pages 2.01
  - Module-init-tools 3.1
  - Perl 5.8.6
  - Procps 3.2.5

- Psmisc 21.6
- Sed 4.1.4
- Shadow 4.0.9
- Sysvinit 2.86
- Tar 1.15.1
- Texinfo 4.8
- Tcl 8.4.9
- Udev 056
- Util-linux 2.12q
- Zlib 1.2.2
  
- Added:
  - bash-3.0-fixes-3.patch
  - bash-3.0-avoid\_WCONTINUED-1.patch
  - flex-2.5.31-debian\_fixes-3.patch
  - glibc-2.3.4-fix\_test-1.patch
  - gzip-1.3.5-security\_fixes-1.patch
  - Hotplug 2004\_09\_23
  - mktemp-1.5-add\_tempfile-2.patch
  - sysklogd-1.4.1-fixes-1.patch
  - tar-1.15.1-sparse\_fix-1.patch
  - util-linux-2.12p-cramfs-1.patch
  - vim-6.0-security\_fix-1.patch
  - zlib-1.2.2-security\_fix-1.patch;
  
- Removed:
  - bash-3.0-display\_wrap-1.patch
  - flex-2.5.31-debian\_fixes-2.patch
  - man-1.5o1-80cols-1.patch
  - mktemp-1.5-add\_tempfile-1.patch
  - sysklogd-1.4.1-kernel\_headers-1.patch

- sysvinit-2.85-proclen-1.patch
  - texinfo-4.7-segfault-1.patch
  - util-linux-2.12b-sfdisk-1.patch
  - zlib-1.2.1-security-1.patch
- July 9th, 2005 [archaic]: Rewrote kernel notes.
  - July 9th, 2005 [matt]: Added information regarding security mailing lists and freshmeat to chapter09/whatnow.xml. Fixes bug 1583. Thanks to Steve Crosby for the report and the suggested text.
  - July 7th, 2005 [manuel]: Revised packages and patches sizes. Using the lfs-packages-6.1.tar package and `du -k` to measure it. Fixed beginpage tags for PDF output. Removed blank pages in PDF output for non-published versions.
  - July 6th, 2005 [archaic]: Added security patch for zlib.
  - July 6th, 2005 [matt]: Several typo corrections, as suggested by Bernard Leak.
  - July 5th, 2005 [archaic]: Removed reference to the wiki. Pointed to the FAQ.
  - July 4th, 2005 [archaic]: Reworded errata page so it only refers to security warnings and bug fixes, not new features.
  - July 4th, 2005 [archaic]: Brought (hopefully) all references of man/info pages into conformity. Man page conformity was based on if referring to a specific man page or man pages in general. Updated typography to reflect this.
  - July 2nd, 2005 [archaic]: Several minor wording changes in chapters 8 and 9 (matt). Also removed the paragraph about compressing kernel modules as it is hint material at best.
  - July 2nd, 2005 [archaic]: Several minor wording changes in chapter 8 (matt).
  - July 1st, 2005 [archaic]: Several minor wording changes in chapter 6 (matt).
  - July 1st, 2005 [archaic]: Brought all occurrences of LFS-Bootscripts into conformity.
  - June 30th, 2005 [archaic]: Several minor wording changes in chapters 1 - 5 (matt).
  - June 30th, 2005 [archaic]: Added a livecd-root entity.
  - June 29th, 2005 [archaic]: Moved the host requirements page to the preface section of the book.
  - June 28th, 2005 [archaic]: Switched from mounting /dev on a ramfs to a tmpfs.
  - June 27th, 2005 [matthew]: Removed mention of test suite problems from chapter 1 as more comprehensive information is given in chapter 5 (archaic).
  - June 27th, 2005 [matthew]: Reworded description of the glibc atime failure case, and removed the description of the shm test failure as we already mount a tmpfs (archaic).
  - June 27th, 2005 [archaic]: Filled in text for errata page. Thanks for the text, Steve!
  - June 26th, 2005 [manuel]: Small tags corrections.
  - June 25th, 2005 [archaic]: Added placeholder for errata page and a temporary link (currently dead).

- June 25th, 2005 [archaic]: Added "generic-version" and "test-results" entities.
- June 25th, 2005 [archaic]: Added the compress symlink to gzip.
- June 25th, 2005 [jhuntwork]: Added a --with-tclinclude flag to Expect build to ensure that it knows where to find the Tcl source directory.
- June 25th, 2005 [matthew]: Updated to the latest version of the mktemp tempfile patch, which supports building outside the source directory
- June 23rd, 2005 [archaic]: Rewrote the inputrc page.
- June 22nd, 2005 [archaic]: Added a link to point to test results.
- June 22nd, 2005 [archaic]: Upgraded shadow to 4.0.9. Removed lastlog patch.
- June 21st, 2005 [archaic]: Removed --with-included-regex from chapter05/grep since there seems to no longer be a valid reason to use it and the explanation of it was incorrect.
- June 21st, 2005 [archaic]: Updated to findutils-4.2.23.
- June 20th, 2005 [archaic]: Updated flex patch from -2 to -3.
- June 20th, 2005 [manuel]: Added a warning about kernel headers and Linux-Libc-Headers, plus fixed the list of installed files on kernel.xml (bug 1569). Some typos and tags fixes ported from trunk (r6048 to r6050 and r6053 to r6056.) Fixed top program description (bug 1549.) Fixed tar description (bug 1553.) Reworded Util-linux patch explanation (bug 1554.)
- June 19th, 2005 [jhuntwork]: Changed listing of IRC servers to show only irc.linuxfromscratch.org.
- June 19th, 2005 [jhuntwork]: Removed outdated bootcd page and added a brief description of the LiveCD to section 1.1.
- June 16th, 2005 [archaic]: Added installation dependencies for hotplug.
- June 16th, 2005 [matthew]: Another round of typo and markup fixes in chapter 7, as reported by Randy McMurchy.
- June 16th, 2005 [matthew]: Typo and markup fixes in chapter 7, as reported by Randy McMurchy.
- June 16th, 2005 [jhuntwork]: Adjusted description of the patch package. Thanks Randy McMurchy.
- June 16th, 2005 [archaic]: Fixed link to BLFS's db page referenced in iproute2. (merged from trunk r6006)
- June 15th, 2005 [archaic]: Added --disable-nls to pass2 binutils to avoid requirement of gettext. (merged from trunk r5983)
- June 14th, 2005 [archaic]: Updated all build sizes. (merged from trunk r5916, r5917, r5918, and r5972)
- June 14th, 2005 [archaic]: Removed --with-included-regex from chapter6's grep since it is less reliable than glibc's in non-C locales.
- June 14th, 2005 [archaic]: Removed references to separate gcc tarballs (gcc-core, gcc-g++, etc.)
- June 12th, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to linux-2.6.11.12.
- June 8th, 2005 [archaic]: Removed suggestion on where to move /sources, and reworded the rest of the page (chapter06/revisechroot.xml).

- June 8th, 2005 [archaic]: Added a command to prevent module-init-tools from rewriting its man page (which relies on docbook2man).
- Jun 1st, 2005 [manuel]: Changed patches root to lfs/svn/testing/
- May 23rd, 2005 [manuel]: Minor wording improvements (thanks to Peter Ennis)
- May 22nd, 2005 [matt]: Updated to Linux-2.6.11.10.
- May 15th, 2005 [matt]: Added gzip security patch.
- May 15th, 2005 [matt]: Updated to Linux 2.6.11.9.
- May 15th, 2005 [matt]: Updated to LFS-Bootscripts 3.2.1.
- May 12th, 2005 [matt]: More wording and tagging improvements (thanks to Peter Ennis and Tony Morgan)
- May 12th, 2005 [matt]: Minor wording improvements (thanks to Peter Ennis)
- April 27th, 2005 [archaic]: Added a patch to fix 2 glibc test suite failures when the running kernel is 2.6.11.x.
- April 18th, 2005 [manuel]: Adjusted the beginpage tags to match the previous text changes.
- April 17th, 2005 [manuel]: Updated the stylesheets to use DocBook-XSL 1.68.1.
- April 17, 2005 [matt]: Don't create hotplug's events log file; the bootscripts handle that for us.
- April 17, 2005 [matt]: Use canonical charmaps in /etc/profile and don't set LC\_ALL (Ken Moffat and Alexander Patrakov)
- April 16, 2005 [matt]: Reword handling of hotpluggable devices now that we install the hotplug package (Andrew Benton)
- April 16, 2005 [matt]: Minor wording/typo fixes (Allard Welter)
- April 16, 2005 [matt]: Minor wording/typo fixes (Peter Ennis)
- April 16, 2005 [matt]: Removed references to statically linking the pass 1 toolchain which should have gone as part of bug 1061 (Andrew Benton)
- April 13, 2005 [manuel]: Spelling fixes pointed by Archiac. Added tags to fix the PDF look in chapter 06.
- April 12, 2005 [manuel]: Small redaction changes. Added tags to fix the PDF look in all chapters except chapter 06.
- April 11, 2005 [manuel]: Mention bzip2's test suite. Several tags and text corrections.
- April 6, 2005 [matt]: Move e2fsprogs sed command to before entering the build directory (Steffen R. Knollmann).
- April 4, 2005 [matt]: Typo: The udev initscript registers udevsend, not udev, as the hotplug handler (Bryan Kadzban)
- April 4, 2005 [matt]: No need to manually create /var/log/hotplug as hotplug's Makefile creates it (Ken Moffat). Also minor rewording to improve consistency.
- April 4, 2005 [matt]: Fix e2fsprogs compile problem (Ken Moffat & Greg Schafer)

- April 2, 2005 [jhuntwork]: Fixed dtd url for syslogd xml files
- March 31, 2005 [jhuntwork]: Changed the link for less to point to ftp.gnu.org
- March 31, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to LFS-Bootscripts 3.2.0
- March 31, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to m4-1.4.3
- March 30, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to iproute2-2.6.11-050330
- March 30, 2005 [jhuntwork]: Removed syslog-ng-1.6.6, libol-0.3.15. Reinstated syslogd-1.4.1. Thanks to Archaic for the patch.
- March 26, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to linux-libc-headers-2.6.11.2
- March 26, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to linux-libc-headers-2.6.11.1
- March 26, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to linux-2.6.11.6
- March 22, 2005 [jim]: Upgraded to e2fsprogs-1.3.7.
- March 21, 2005 [jim]: Added patch to fix issue with shadow and lastlog.
- March 19, 2005 [jim]: Added patch to fix issue with tar -S
- March 19, 2005 [matt]: Removed references to kernel security patch
- March 19, 2005 [jim]: Upgraded to udev-056
- March 19, 2005 [jim]: Upgraded to linux-2.6.11.5
- March 19, 2005 [jim]: Change references to Iproute2 to IPRoute2
- March 18, 2005 [jim]: Upgraded to Findutils 4.2.20
- March 16, 2005 [jim]: Upgraded to linux-2.6.11.4
- March 16, 2005 [jim]: Removed reference to kernel security patch
- March 16, 2005 [jim]: Removed find\_update patch for IPRoute2, it is not needed anymore
- March 15, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to iproute2-2.6.11-050314
- March 14, 2005 [matt]: List the installed files/directories descriptions in a somewhat more alphabetic order.
- March 14, 2005 [matt]: Fix typos, and reword some of the hotplug explanations for (hopefully) improved clarity
- March 14, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to gettext-0.14.3
- March 14, 2005 [jim]: Added `/var/log/hotplug` for capturing of hotplug events. Added `/lib/firmware` for firmware loading with hotplug
- March 13, 2005 [jim]: Updated iproute2 db patch to iproute2-2.6.11-050310. Removed unneeded find\_update patch also for iproute2-2.6.11-050310
- March 13, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to iproute2-2.6.11-050310
- March 13, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to linux-2.6.11.3 and linux-libc-headers-2.6.11.0
- March 13, 2005 [matt]: Reword About SBUs section to reflect the earlier fix for bug 1061

- March 13, 2005 [matt]: Dynamically link the pass1 toolchain to workaround bug 1061 and remove all related explanatory text
- March 12, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to udev-054
- March 12, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to findutils-4.2.19
- March 12, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded psmisc to 21.6
- March 10, 2005 [matt]: gettext no longer installs libgettext{lib,src}.a (Jack Brown)
- March 3, 2005 [matt]: Remove --without-cvs from glibc instructions, as we're not using glibc CVS snapshots anymore
- March 3, 2005 [matt]: Fixed a couple of typo's in the download locations
- March 2, 2005 [matt]: Add note regarding potential custom features in a host distribution's version of e2fsprogs. Fixes bug 1047. Thanks to Steve Crosby for the suggested explanatory text.
- March 2, 2005 [jim]: Update download locations
- February 28, 2005 [jim]: Upgraded bash fixes patch to -3
- February 28, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded binutils to 2.14.94.0.2.2
- February 28, 2005 [matt]: Move /usr/bin/logger to /bin as the bootscripts need it there. Fixes bug 1035.
- February 28, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to iana-etc-1.04
- February 28, 2005 [matt]: Correct the instructions for invoking udev's testsuite (Randy McMurchy)
- February 27, 2005 [matt]: Correct the title of the readline patch in chapter 3. Fixes bug 1049
- February 27, 2005 [matt]: Mention udev's testsuite. Fixes bug 1042
- February 27, 2005 [matt]: Use --without-csharp instead of --disable-csharp, as the latter doesn't work as intended. Fixes bug 1033
- February 27, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to gettext-0.14.2
- February 27, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to findutils-4.2.18
- February 27, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to bzip2-1.0.3
- February 19, 2005 [gerard]: Chapter 5-Stripping: removed doc from the directories to be removed in /tools. This directory is not created anymore.
- February 19, 2005 [jeremy]: Added correction to chapter 5 glibc build to fix the disabling of selinux functionality. Thanks to Bobson on IRC (bobson@bobson.net) for pointing this out. Closes bugzilla 1034.
- February 19, 2005 [gerard]: Synchronized Testing branch with current Unstable/Trunk. Move Testing branch to Trunk and discontinue Testing branch as per lfs-dev discussion on branch changes.
- February 5, 2005 [matt]: Copy hotplug's pnp.distmap file to silence its warnings. Also tidy up some explanatory text
- January 29, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to sed-4.1.4

- January 29, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to procps-3.2.5
- January 29, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to shadow-4.0.7
- January 29, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to util-linux-2.12q.
- January 27, 2005 [matt]: Added a warning that the `/usr/src/linux` symlink shouldn't be created. Fixes bug 1012.
- January 27, 2005 [matt]: Added link to the live-cd FTP location. Fixes bug 1014.
- January 27, 2005 [matt]: Added bison, flex and m4 to binutils dependency list. Fixes Bug 1018.
- January 27, 2005 [manuel]: Updated to gcc-3.4.3-specs-2.patch.
- January 19, 2005 [jeremy]: Added an extra symlink for `libgcc_s.so` to chapter 6 - this never migrated from unstable until now.
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Added a security patch for the kernel
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Added a security patch for vim
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to man-1.5p
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to texinfo-4.8
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to util-linux-2.12p
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to udev-050
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to tcl-8.4.9
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to tar-1.15.1
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to perl-5.8.6
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to man-pages-2.01
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to linux-libc-headers-2.6.10.0
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to linux-2.6.10
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to gcc-3.4.3
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to bison-2.0
- January 9, 2005 [matt]: Upgraded to autoconf-1.9.4
- January 5, 2005 [jeremy]: Minor textual correction in network configuration, since `iproute` will not recognize the old `eth0:1` format for ip aliasing. Closes bug 1013.
- January 5, 2005 [jeremy]: Added the `--disable-selinux` parameter to Ch 5 `glibc`. Allows building from hosts which use SELinux functionality, like Fedora Core 3
- December 25, 2004 [jeremy]: Added text suggested by MSB, closing Bug 943
- December 25, 2004 [jeremy]: Upgraded binutils to 2.14.94.0.2 - should fix the TLS strip issue that's been seen, at least on X86
- December 22, 2004 [manuel]: Readded to `chapter09/reboot.xml` a para lost from version 5.1.



- December 20, 2004 [manuel]: Made grub's configuration location FHS compliant.
- December 19, 2004 [manuel]: Added the irc.lfs-matrix.de IRC server.
- December 5, 2004 [jeremy]: Added the DOCBOOKTOMAN parameter to Module-init-utils - without this, compilation fails. Thanks Boris Buegling
- December 2, 2004 [jeremy]: Removed the old display\_wrap bash patch, in favor of the newer fixes patch, and added the avoid\_WCONTINUED patch as well
- December 2, 2004 [jeremy]: Upgraded to TCL 8.4.8, Grep 2.5.1a Util-linux 2.12i, Iana-etc 1.03, File 4.12, Module-init-tools 3.1, Procps 3.2.4
- December 2, 2004 [jeremy]: Migrated change from unstable to build Glibc against sanitized linux-libc-headers instead of raw kernel headers, bringing us more in line with what the kernel developers think should be happening.
- December 1, 2004 [jeremy]: Dropped Udev from being built in Chapter 5, in favor of creating a minimal set of devices at the beginning of Chapter 6. All devices are created after the installation of Udev near the end of Chapter 6
- December 1, 2004 [jeremy]: Upgraded to Automake 1.9.3, Binutils 2.15.92.0.2, Findutils 4.2.3, GCC 3.4.2, Glibc 20041011, Iana-Etc 1.02 Iproute2 2.6.9-041019, LFS-Bootscripts 2.2.3, Libtool 1.5.10, Linux 2.6.9 Linux-libc-headers 2.6.9.1, Man 1.5o1, Man-pages 1.70, Shadow 4.0.6, Udev 046, Zlib 1.2.2, Hotplug 2004\_09\_23, Libol 0.3.14, Syslog-ng 1.6.5

Branch frozen for LFS 6.0 as of October 10, 2004

## 1.3. Resources

### 1.3.1. FAQ

If during the building of the LFS system you encounter any errors, have any questions, or think there is a typo in the book, please start by consulting the Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) that is located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/faq/>.

### 1.3.2. Mailing Lists

The `linuxfromscratch.org` server hosts a number of mailing lists used for the development of the LFS project. These lists include the main development and support lists, among others.

For information on the different lists, how to subscribe, archive locations, and additional information, visit <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mail.html>.

### 1.3.3. News Server

The mailing lists hosted at `linuxfromscratch.org` are also accessible via the Network News Transfer Protocol (NNTP) server. All messages posted to a mailing list are copied to the corresponding newsgroup, and vice versa.

The news server is located at `news.linuxfromscratch.org`.

### 1.3.4. IRC

Several members of the LFS community offer assistance on our community Internet Relay Chat (IRC) network. Before using this support, please make sure that your question is not already answered in the LFS FAQ or the mailing list archives. You can find the IRC network at `irc.linuxfromscratch.org`. The support channel is named `#LFS-support`.

### 1.3.5. References

For additional information on the packages, useful tips are available in the LFS Package Reference page located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/~matthew/LFS-references.html>.

### 1.3.6. Mirror Sites

The LFS project has a number of world-wide mirrors to make accessing the website and downloading the required packages more convenient. Please visit the LFS website at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors.html> for a list of current mirrors.

### 1.3.7. Contact Information

Please direct all your questions and comments to one of the LFS mailing lists (see above).

## 1.4. Help

If an issue or a question is encountered while working through this book, check the FAQ page at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/faq/#generalfaq>. Questions are often already answered there. If your question is not answered on this page, try to find the source of the problem. The following hint will give you some guidance for troubleshooting: <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/errors.txt>.

We also have a wonderful LFS community that is willing to offer assistance through the mailing lists and IRC (see the Section 1.3, “Resources” section of this book). In order to assist with diagnosing and solving the problem, please include all relevant information in your request for help.

### 1.4.1. Things to Mention

Apart from a brief explanation of the problem being experienced, the essential things to include in any request for help are:

- The version of the book being used (in this case 6.1)
- The host distribution and version being used to create LFS
- The package or section the problem was encountered in
- The exact error message or symptom being received
- Note whether you have deviated from the book at all



#### Note

Deviating from this book does *not* mean that we will not help you. After all, LFS is about personal preference. Being upfront about any changes to the established procedure helps us evaluate and determine possible causes of your problem.

### 1.4.2. Configure Script Problems

If something goes wrong while running the **configure** script, review the `config.log` file. This file may contain errors encountered during **configure** which were not printed to the screen. Include the *relevant* lines if you need to ask for help.

### 1.4.3. Compilation Problems

Both the screen output and the contents of various files are useful in determining the cause of compilation problems. The screen output from the **configure** script and the **make** run can be helpful. It is not necessary to include the entire output, but do include enough of the relevant information. Below is an example of the type of information to include from the screen output from **make**:

```

gcc -DALIASEPATH="/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale:.\"
-DLOCALEDIR="/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale\"
-DLIBDIR="/mnt/lfs/usr/lib\"
-DINCLUDEDIR="/mnt/lfs/usr/include\" -DHAVE_CONFIG_H -I. -I.
-g -O2 -c getopt1.c
gcc -g -O2 -static -o make ar.o arscan.o commands.o dir.o
expand.o file.o function.o getopt.o implicit.o job.o main.o
misc.o read.o remake.o rule.o signame.o variable.o vpath.o
default.o remote-stub.o version.o opt1.o
-lutil job.o: In function `load_too_high':
/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1/job.c:1565: undefined reference
to `getloadavg'
collect2: ld returned 1 exit status
make[2]: *** [make] Error 1
make[2]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make[1]: *** [all-recursive] Error 1
make[1]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make: *** [all-recursive-am] Error 2

```

In this case, many people would just include the bottom section:

```
make [2]: *** [make] Error 1
```

This is not enough information to properly diagnose the problem because it only notes that something went wrong, not *what* went wrong. The entire section, as in the example above, is what should be saved because it includes the command that was executed and the associated error message(s).

An excellent article about asking for help on the Internet is available online at <http://catb.org/~esr/faqs/smart-questions.html>. Read and follow the hints in this document to increase the likelihood of getting the help you need.



## Chapter 2. Preparing a New Partition

### 2.1. Introduction

In this chapter, the partition which will host the LFS system is prepared. We will create the partition itself, create a file system on it, and mount it.

## 2.2. Creating a New Partition

Like most other operating systems, LFS is usually installed on a dedicated partition. The recommended approach to building an LFS system is to use an available empty partition or, if you have enough unpartitioned space, to create one. However, an LFS system (in fact even multiple LFS systems) may also be installed on a partition already occupied by another operating system and the different systems will co-exist peacefully. The document [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/lfs\\_next\\_to\\_existing\\_systems.txt](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/lfs_next_to_existing_systems.txt) explains how to implement this, whereas this book discusses the method of using a fresh partition for the installation.

A minimal system requires a partition of around 1.3 gigabytes (GB). This is enough to store all the source tarballs and compile the packages. However, if the LFS system is intended to be the primary Linux system, additional software will probably be installed which will require additional space (2-3 GB). The LFS system itself will not take up this much room. A large portion of this requirement is to provide sufficient free temporary storage. Compiling packages can require a lot of disk space which will be reclaimed after the package is installed.

Because there is not always enough Random Access Memory (RAM) available for compilation processes, it is a good idea to use a small disk partition as swap space. This is used by the kernel to store seldom-used data and leave more memory available for active processes. The swap partition for an LFS system can be the same as the one used by the host system, in which case it is not necessary to create another one.

Start a disk partitioning program such as **cfdisk** or **fdisk** with a command line option naming the hard disk on which the new partition will be created—for example `/dev/hda` for the primary Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE) disk. Create a Linux native partition and a swap partition, if needed. Please refer to `cfdisk(8)` or `fdisk(8)` if you do not yet know how to use the programs.

Remember the designation of the new partition (e.g., `hda5`). This book will refer to this as the LFS partition. Also remember the designation of the swap partition. These names will be needed later for the `/etc/fstab` file.

## 2.3. Creating a File System on the Partition

Now that a blank partition has been set up, the file system can be created. The most widely-used system in the Linux world is the second extended file system (ext2), but with newer high-capacity hard disks, journaling file systems are becoming increasingly popular. We will create an ext2 file system. Build instructions for other file systems can be found at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/postlfs/filesystems.html>.

To create an ext2 file system on the LFS partition, run the following:

```
mke2fs /dev/[xxx]
```

Replace `[xxx]` with the name of the LFS partition (`hda5` in our previous example).



### Note

Some host distributions use custom features in their filesystem creation tools (e2fsprogs). This can cause problems when booting into your new LFS in Chapter 9, as those features will not be supported by the LFS-installed e2fsprogs; you will get an error similar to “unsupported filesystem features, upgrade your e2fsprogs”. To check if your host system uses custom enhancements, run the following command:

```
debugfs -R feature /dev/[xxx]
```

If the output contains features other than: `dir_index`; `filetype`; `large_file`; `resize_inode` or `sparse_super` then your host system may have custom enhancements. In that case, to avoid later problems, you should compile the stock e2fsprogs package and use the resulting binaries to re-create the filesystem on your LFS partition:

```
cd /tmp
tar xjf /path/to/sources/e2fsprogs-1.37.tar.bz2
cd e2fsprogs-1.37
mkdir build
cd build
../configure
make #note that we intentionally don't 'make install' here!
./misc/mke2fs /dev/[xxx]
cd /tmp
rm -rf e2fsprogs-1.37
```

If a swap partition was created, it will need to be initialized for use by issuing the command below. If you are using an existing swap partition, there is no need to format it.

```
mkswap /dev/[yyy]
```

Replace `[yyy]` with the name of the swap partition.



## 2.4. Mounting the New Partition

Now that a file system has been created, the partition needs to be made accessible. In order to do this, the partition needs to be mounted at a chosen mount point. For the purposes of this book, it is assumed that the file system is mounted under `/mnt/lfs`, but the directory choice is up to you.

Choose a mount point and assign it to the LFS environment variable by running:

```
export LFS=/mnt/lfs
```

Next, create the mount point and mount the LFS file system by running:

```
mkdir -p $LFS
mount /dev/[xxx] $LFS
```

Replace `[xxx]` with the designation of the LFS partition.

If using multiple partitions for LFS (e.g., one for `/` and another for `/usr`), mount them using:

```
mkdir -p $LFS
mount /dev/[xxx] $LFS
mkdir $LFS/usr
mount /dev/[yyy] $LFS/usr
```

Replace `[xxx]` and `[yyy]` with the appropriate partition names.

Ensure that this new partition is not mounted with permissions that are too restrictive (such as the `nosuid`, `nodev`, or `noatime` options). Run the `mount` command without any parameters to see what options are set for the mounted LFS partition. If `nosuid`, `nodev`, and/or `noatime` are set, the partition will need to be remounted.

Now that there is an established place to work, it is time to download the packages.

## **Part II. Preparing for the Build**

## Chapter 3. Packages and Patches

### 3.1. Introduction

This chapter includes a list of packages that need to be downloaded for building a basic Linux system. The listed version numbers correspond to versions of the software that are known to work, and this book is based on their use. We highly recommend not using newer versions because the build commands for one version may not work with a newer version. The newest package versions may also have problems that require work-arounds. These work-arounds will be developed and stabilized in the development version of the book.

Download locations may not always be accessible. If a download location has changed since this book was published, Google (<http://www.google.com/>) provides a useful search engine for most packages. If this search is unsuccessful, try one of the alternative means of downloading discussed at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/packages.html>.

Downloaded packages and patches will need to be stored somewhere that is conveniently available throughout the entire build. A working directory is also required to unpack the sources and build them. `$LFS/sources` can be used both as the place to store the tarballs and patches and as a working directory. By using this directory, the required elements will be located on the LFS partition and will be available during all stages of the building process.

To create this directory, execute, as user *root*, the following command before starting the download session:

```
mkdir $LFS/sources
```

Make this directory writable and sticky. “Sticky” means that even if multiple users have write permission on a directory, only the owner of a file can delete the file within a sticky directory. The following command will enable the write and sticky modes:

```
chmod a+wt $LFS/sources
```

## 3.2. All Packages

Download or otherwise obtain the following packages:

- Autoconf (2.59) - 908 kilobytes (KB):  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/autoconf/>*
- Automake (1.9.5) - 748 KB:  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/automake/>*
- Bash (3.0) - 1,824 KB:  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bash/>*
- Binutils (2.15.94.0.2.2) - 11,056 KB:  
*<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/devel/binutils/>*
- Bison (2.0) - 916 KB:  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bison/>*
- Bzip2 (1.0.3) - 596 KB:  
*<http://www.bzip.org/>*
- Coreutils (5.2.1) - 4,184 KB:  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/coreutils/>*
- DejaGNU (1.4.4) - 852 KB:  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/dejagnu/>*
- Diffutils (2.8.1) - 648 KB:  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/diffutils/>*
- E2fsprogs (1.37) - 3,100 KB:  
*<http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/e2fsprogs/>*
- Expect (5.43.0) - 416 KB:  
*<http://expect.nist.gov/src/>*
- File (4.13) - 324 KB:  
*<ftp://ftp.gw.com/mirrors/pub/unix/file/>*



### Note

File (4.13) may no longer be available at the listed location. The site administrators of the master download location occasionally remove older versions when new ones are released. An alternative download location that may have the correct version available is *<ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/pub/lfs/>*.

- Findutils (4.2.23) - 784 KB:  
*<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/findutils/>*
- Flex (2.5.31) - 672 KB:  
*<http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/lex/>*

- Gawk (3.1.4) - 1,696 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gawk/>
- GCC (3.4.3) - 26,816 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/>
- Gettext (0.14.3) - 4,568 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gettext/>
- Glibc (2.3.4) - 12,924 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/glibc/>
- Glibc-Linuxthreads (2.3.4) - 236 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/glibc/>
- Grep (2.5.1a) - 520 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/grep/>
- Groff (1.19.1) - 2,096 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/groff/>
- GRUB (0.96) - 768 KB:  
<ftp://alpha.gnu.org/gnu/grub/>
- Gzip (1.3.5) - 284 KB:  
<ftp://alpha.gnu.org/gnu/gzip/>
- Hotplug (2004\_09\_23) - 40 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/kernel/hotplug/>
- Iana-Etc (1.04) - 176 KB:  
<http://www.sethwicklein.net/projects/iana-etc/downloads/>
- Inetutils (1.4.2) - 752 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/inetutils/>
- IPRoute2 (2.6.11-050330) - 276 KB:  
<http://developer.osdl.org/dev/iproute2/download/>
- Kbd (1.12) - 624 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/kbd/>
- Less (382) - 216 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/less/>
- LFS-Bootscripts (3.2.1) - 32 KB:  
<http://downloads.linuxfromscratch.org/>
- Libtool (1.5.14) - 1,604 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/libtool/>
- Linux (2.6.11.12) - 35,792 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/v2.6/>
- Linux-Libc-Headers (2.6.11.2) - 2,476 KB:  
<http://ep09.pld-linux.org/~mmazur/linux-libc-headers/>

- M4 (1.4.3) - 304 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/m4/>
- Make (3.80) - 904 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/make/>
- Man (1.5p) - 208 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/man/>
- Man-pages (2.01) - 1,640 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/docs/manpages/>
- Mktmp (1.5) - 68 KB:  
<ftp://ftp.mktemp.org/pub/mktemp/>
- Module-Init-Tools (3.1) - 128 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/kernel/module-init-tools/>
- Ncurses (5.4) - 1,556 KB:  
<ftp://invisible-island.net/ncurses/>
- Patch (2.5.4) - 156 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/patch/>
- Perl (5.8.6) - 9,484 KB:  
<http://ftp.funet.fi/pub/CPAN/src/>
- Procps (3.2.5) - 224 KB:  
<http://procps.sourceforge.net/>
- Psmisc (21.6) - 188 KB:  
<http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/psmisc/>
- Readline (5.0) - 1,456 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/readline/>
- Sed (4.1.4) - 632 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/sed/>
- Shadow (4.0.9) - 1,084 KB:  
<ftp://ftp.pld.org.pl/software/shadow/>



### Note

Shadow (4.0.9) may no longer be available at the listed location. The site administrators of the master download location occasionally remove older versions when new ones are released. An alternative download location that may have the correct version available is  
<ftp://ftp.linuxfromscratch.org/pub/lfs/>.

- Sysklogd (1.4.1) - 72 KB:  
<http://www.infodrom.org/projects/sysklogd/download/>
- Sysvinit (2.86) - 88 KB:  
<ftp://ftp.cistron.nl/pub/people/miquels/sysvinit/>

- Tar (1.15.1) - 1,580 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/tar/>
- Tcl (8.4.9) - 2,748 KB:  
<http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/>
- Texinfo (4.8) - 1,492 KB:  
<http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/texinfo/>
- Udev (056) - 476 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/kernel/hotplug/>
- Udev Rules Configuration - 5 KB:  
<http://downloads.linuxfromscratch.org/udev-config-3.rules>
- Util-linux (2.12q) - 1,344 KB:  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/util-linux/>
- Vim (6.3) - 3,620 KB:  
<ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/vim/unix/>
- Vim (6.3) language files (optional) - 540 KB:  
<ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/vim/extra/>
- Zlib (1.2.2) - 368 KB:  
<http://www.zlib.net/>

Total size of these packages: 146 MB

### 3.3. Needed Patches

In addition to the packages, several patches are also required. These patches correct any mistakes in the packages that should be fixed by the maintainer. The patches also make small modifications to make the packages easier to work with. The following patches will be needed to build an LFS system:

- Bash Various Fixes - 23 KB:  
*<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/bash-3.0-fixes-3.patch>*
- Bash Avoid Wcontinued Patch - 1 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/bash-3.0-avoid\\_WCONTINUED-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/bash-3.0-avoid_WCONTINUED-1.patch)*
- Coreutils Suppress Uptime, Kill, Su Patch - 15 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/coreutils-5.2.1-suppress\\_uptime\\_kill\\_su-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/coreutils-5.2.1-suppress_uptime_kill_su-1.patch)*
- Coreutils Uname Patch - 4 KB:  
*<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/coreutils-5.2.1-uname-2.patch>*
- Expect Spawn Patch - 7 KB:  
*<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/expect-5.43.0-spawn-1.patch>*
- Flex Brokenness Patch - 156 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/flex-2.5.31-debian\\_fixes-3.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/flex-2.5.31-debian_fixes-3.patch)*
- GCC Linkonce Patch - 12 KB:  
*<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/gcc-3.4.3-linkonce-1.patch>*
- GCC No-Fixincludes Patch - 1 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/gcc-3.4.3-no\\_fixincludes-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/gcc-3.4.3-no_fixincludes-1.patch)*
- GCC Specs Patch - 14 KB:  
*<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/gcc-3.4.3-specs-2.patch>*
- Glibc Fix Testsuite Patch - 1 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/glibc-2.3.4-fix\\_test-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/glibc-2.3.4-fix_test-1.patch)*
- Gzip Security Patch - 2 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/gzip-1.3.5-security\\_fixes-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/gzip-1.3.5-security_fixes-1.patch)*
- Inetutils Kernel Headers Patch - 1 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/inetutils-1.4.2-kernel\\_headers-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/inetutils-1.4.2-kernel_headers-1.patch)*
- Inetutils No-Server-Man-Pages Patch - 4 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/inetutils-1.4.2-no\\_server\\_man\\_pages-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/inetutils-1.4.2-no_server_man_pages-1.patch)*
- IPRoute2 Disable DB Patch - 1 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/iproute2-2.6.11\\_050330-remove\\_db-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/iproute2-2.6.11_050330-remove_db-1.patch)*
- Mktmp Tempfile Patch - 3 KB:  
*[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/mktemp-1.5-add\\_tempfile-2.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/mktemp-1.5-add_tempfile-2.patch)*
- Perl Libc Patch - 1 KB:  
*<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/perl-5.8.6-libc-1.patch>*



- Readline Fixes Patch - 7 KB:  
<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/readline-5.0-fixes-1.patch>
- Sysklogd Fixes Patch - 27 KB:  
<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/sysklogd-1.4.1-fixes-1.patch>
- Tar Sparse Fix Patch - 1 KB:  
[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/tar-1.15.1-sparse\\_fix-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/tar-1.15.1-sparse_fix-1.patch)
- Util-linux Cramfs Patch - 3 KB:  
<http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/util-linux-2.12q-cramfs-1.patch>
- Vim Security Patch - 8 KB:  
[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/vim-6.3-security\\_fix-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/vim-6.3-security_fix-1.patch)
- Zlib Security Patch - 1 KB:  
[http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/zlib-1.2.2-security\\_fix-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/6.1/zlib-1.2.2-security_fix-1.patch)

In addition to the above required patches, there exist a number of optional patches created by the LFS community. These optional patches solve minor problems or enable functionality that is not enabled by default. Feel free to peruse the patches database located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/> and acquire any additional patches to suit the system needs.

## Chapter 4. Final Preparations

### 4.1. About \$LFS

Throughout this book, the environment variable `LFS` will be used several times. It is paramount that this variable is always defined. It should be set to the mount point chosen for the LFS partition. Check that the `LFS` variable is set up properly with:

```
echo $LFS
```

Make sure the output shows the path to the LFS partition's mount point, which is `/mnt/lfs` if the provided example was followed. If the output is incorrect, the variable can be set with:

```
export LFS=/mnt/lfs
```

Having this variable set is beneficial in that commands such as `mkdir $LFS/tools` can be typed literally. The shell will automatically replace “`$LFS`” with “`/mnt/lfs`” (or whatever the variable was set to) when it processes the command line.

Do not forget to check that `$LFS` is set whenever you leave and reenter the current working environment (as when doing a “`su`” to *root* or another user).

## 4.2. Creating the `$LFS/tools` Directory

All programs compiled in Chapter 5 will be installed under `$LFS/tools` to keep them separate from the programs compiled in Chapter 6. The programs compiled here are temporary tools and will not be a part of the final LFS system. By keeping these programs in a separate directory, they can easily be discarded later after their use. This also prevents these programs from ending up in the host production directories (easy to do by accident in Chapter 5).

Create the required directory by running the following as *root*:

```
mkdir $LFS/tools
```

The next step is to create a `/tools` symlink on the host system. This will point to the newly-created directory on the LFS partition. Run this command as *root* as well:

```
ln -s $LFS/tools /
```



### Note

The above command is correct. The **ln** command has a few syntactic variations, so be sure to check **info coreutils ln** and `ln(1)` before reporting what you may think is an error.

The created symlink enables the toolchain to be compiled so that it always refers to `/tools`, meaning that the compiler, assembler, and linker will work both in this chapter (when we are still using some tools from the host) and in the next (when we are “chrooted” to the LFS partition).

## 4.3. Adding the LFS User

When logged in as user *root*, making a single mistake can damage or destroy a system. Therefore, we recommend building the packages in this chapter as an unprivileged user. You could use your own user name, but to make it easier to set up a clean working environment, create a new user called *lfs* as a member of a new group (also named *lfs*) and use this user during the installation process. As *root*, issue the following commands to add the new user:

```
groupadd lfs
useradd -s /bin/bash -g lfs -m -k /dev/null lfs
```

The meaning of the command line options:

*-s /bin/bash*

This makes **bash** the default shell for user *lfs*.

*-g lfs*

This option adds user *lfs* to group *lfs*.

*-m*

This creates a home directory for *lfs*.

*-k /dev/null*

This parameter prevents possible copying of files from a skeleton directory (default is */etc/skel*) by changing the input location to the special null device.

*lfs*

This is the actual name for the created group and user.

To log in as *lfs* (as opposed to switching to user *lfs* when logged in as *root*, which does not require the *lfs* user to have a password), give *lfs* a password:

```
passwd lfs
```

Grant *lfs* full access to *\$LFS/tools* by making *lfs* the directory owner:

```
chown lfs $LFS/tools
```

If a separate working directory was created as suggested, give user *lfs* ownership of this directory:

```
chown lfs $LFS/sources
```

Next, login as user *lfs*. This can be done via a virtual console, through a display manager, or with the following substitute user command:

```
su - lfs
```

The “-” instructs **su** to start a login shell as opposed to a non-login shell. The difference between these two types of shells can be found in detail in `bash(1)` and **info bash**.

## 4.4. Setting Up the Environment

Set up a good working environment by creating two new startup files for the **bash** shell. While logged in as user *lfs*, issue the following command to create a new `.bash_profile`:

```
cat > ~/.bash_profile << "EOF"
exec env -i HOME=$HOME TERM=$TERM PS1='\u:\w\$ ' /bin/bash
EOF
```

When logged on as user *lfs*, the initial shell is usually a *login* shell which reads the `/etc/profile` of the host (probably containing some settings and environment variables) and then `.bash_profile`. The **exec env -i.../bin/bash** command in the `.bash_profile` file replaces the running shell with a new one with a completely empty environment, except for the `HOME`, `TERM`, and `PS1` variables. This ensures that no unwanted and potentially hazardous environment variables from the host system leak into the build environment. The technique used here achieves the goal of ensuring a clean environment.

The new instance of the shell is a *non-login* shell, which does not read the `/etc/profile` or `.bash_profile` files, but rather reads the `.bashrc` file instead. Create the `.bashrc` file now:

```
cat > ~/.bashrc << "EOF"
set +h
umask 022
LFS=/mnt/lfs
LC_ALL=POSIX
PATH=/tools/bin:/bin:/usr/bin
export LFS LC_ALL PATH
EOF
```

The **set +h** command turns off **bash**'s hash function. Hashing is ordinarily a useful feature—**bash** uses a hash table to remember the full path of executable files to avoid searching the `PATH` time and again to find the same executable. However, the new tools should be used as soon as they are installed. By switching off the hash function, the shell will always search the `PATH` when a program is to be run. As such, the shell will find the newly compiled tools in `$LFS/tools` as soon as they are available without remembering a previous version of the same program in a different location.

Setting the user file-creation mask (`umask`) to `022` ensures that newly created files and directories are only writable by their owner, but are readable and executable by anyone (assuming default modes are used by the `open(2)` system call, new files will end up with permission mode `644` and directories with mode `755`).

The `LFS` variable should be set to the chosen mount point.

The `LC_ALL` variable controls the localization of certain programs, making their messages follow the conventions of a specified country. If the host system uses a version of `Glibc` older than `2.2.4`, having `LC_ALL` set to something other than “`POSIX`” or “`C`” (during this chapter) may cause issues if you exit the `chroot` environment and wish to return later. Setting `LC_ALL` to “`POSIX`” or “`C`” (the two are equivalent) ensures that everything will work as expected in the `chroot` environment.

By putting `/tools/bin` ahead of the standard `PATH`, all the programs installed in Chapter 5 are picked up by the shell immediately after their installation. This, combined with turning off hashing, limits the risk that old programs are used from the host when the same programs are available in the chapter 5 environment.

Finally, to have the environment fully prepared for building the temporary tools, source the just-created user profile:

```
source ~/.bash_profile
```

## 4.5. About SBUs

Many people would like to know beforehand approximately how long it takes to compile and install each package. Because Linux From Scratch can be built on many different systems, it is impossible to provide accurate time estimates. The biggest package (Glibc) will take approximately 20 minutes on the fastest systems, but could take up to three days on slower systems! Instead of providing actual times, the Standard Build Unit (SBU) measure will be used instead.

The SBU measure works as follows. The first package to be compiled from this book is Binutils in Chapter 5. The time it takes to compile this package is what will be referred to as the Standard Build Unit or SBU. All other compile times will be expressed relative to this time.

For example, consider a package whose compilation time is 4.5 SBUs. This means that if a system took 10 minutes to compile and install the first pass of Binutils, it will take *approximately* 45 minutes to build this example package. Fortunately, most build times are shorter than the one for Binutils.

In general, SBUs are not entirely accurate because they depend on many factors, including the host system's version of GCC. Note that on Symmetric Multi-Processor (SMP)-based machines, SBUs are even less accurate. They are provided here to give an estimate of how long it might take to install a package, but the numbers can vary by as much as dozens of minutes in some cases.

To view actual timings for a number of specific machines, we recommend The LinuxFromScratch SBU Home Page at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/~bdubbs/>.

## 4.6. About the Test Suites

Most packages provide a test suite. Running the test suite for a newly built package is a good idea because it can provide a “sanity check” indicating that everything compiled correctly. A test suite that passes its set of checks usually proves that the package is functioning as the developer intended. It does not, however, guarantee that the package is totally bug free.

Some test suites are more important than others. For example, the test suites for the core toolchain packages—GCC, Binutils, and Glibc—are of the utmost importance due to their central role in a properly functioning system. The test suites for GCC and Glibc can take a very long time to complete, especially on slower hardware, but are strongly recommended.



### Note

Experience has shown that there is little to be gained from running the test suites in Chapter 5. There can be no escaping the fact that the host system always exerts some influence on the tests in that chapter, often causing inexplicable failures. Because the tools built in Chapter 5 are temporary and eventually discarded, we do not recommend running the test suites in Chapter 5 for the average reader. The instructions for running those test suites are provided for the benefit of testers and developers, but they are strictly optional.

A common issue with running the test suites for Binutils and GCC is running out of pseudo terminals (PTYs). This can result in a high number of failing tests. This may happen for several reasons, but the most likely cause is that the host system does not have the `devpts` file system set up correctly. This issue is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 5.

Sometimes package test suites will fail, but for reasons which the developers are aware of and have deemed non-critical. Consult the logs located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/build-logs/6.1/> to verify whether or not these failures are expected. This site is valid for all tests throughout this book.



# Chapter 5. Constructing a Temporary System

## 5.1. Introduction

This chapter shows how to compile and install a minimal Linux system. This system will contain just enough tools to start constructing the final LFS system in Chapter 6 and allow a working environment with more user convenience than a minimum environment would.

There are two steps in building this minimal system. The first step is to build a new and host-independent toolchain (compiler, assembler, linker, libraries, and a few useful utilities). The second step uses this toolchain to build the other essential tools.

The files compiled in this chapter will be installed under the `$LFS/tools` directory to keep them separate from the files installed in the next chapter and the host production directories. Since the packages compiled here are temporary, we do not want them to pollute the soon-to-be LFS system.

Before issuing the build instructions for a package, the package should be unpacked as user *lfs*, and a `cd` into the created directory should be performed. The build instructions assume that the **bash** shell is in use.

Several of the packages are patched before compilation, but only when the patch is needed to circumvent a problem. A patch is often needed in both this and the next chapter, but sometimes in only one or the other. Therefore, do not be concerned if instructions for a downloaded patch seem to be missing. Warning messages about *offset* or *fuzz* may also be encountered when applying a patch. Do not worry about these warnings, as the patch was still successfully applied.

During the compilation of most packages, there will be several warnings that scroll by on the screen. These are normal and can safely be ignored. These warnings are as they appear—warnings about deprecated, but not invalid, use of the C or C++ syntax. C standards change fairly often, and some packages still use the older standard. This is not a problem, but does prompt the warning.

After installing each package, delete its source and build directories, unless specifically instructed otherwise. Deleting the sources saves space and prevents mis-configuration when the same package is reinstalled later. Only three of the packages need to retain the source and build directories in order for their contents to be used by later commands. Pay special attention to these reminders.

Check one last time that the LFS environment variable is set up properly:

```
echo $LFS
```

Make sure the output shows the path to the LFS partition's mount point, which is `/mnt/lfs`, using our example.

## 5.2. Toolchain Technical Notes

This section explains some of the rationale and technical details behind the overall build method. It is not essential to immediately understand everything in this section. Most of this information will be clearer after performing an actual build. This section can be referred back to at any time during the process.

The overall goal of Chapter 5 is to provide a temporary environment that can be chrooted into and from which can be produced a clean, trouble-free build of the target LFS system in Chapter 6. Along the way, we separate the new system from the host system as much as possible, and in doing so, build a self-contained and self-hosted toolchain. It should be noted that the build process has been designed to minimize the risks for new readers and provide maximum educational value at the same time.



### Important

Before continuing, be aware of the name of the working platform, often referred to as the target triplet. Many times, the target triplet will probably be *i686-pc-linux-gnu*. A simple way to determine the name of the target triplet is to run the **config.guess** script that comes with the source for many packages. Unpack the Binutils sources and run the script: `./config.guess` and note the output.

Also be aware of the name of the platform's dynamic linker, often referred to as the dynamic loader (not to be confused with the standard linker **ld** that is part of Binutils). The dynamic linker provided by Glibc finds and loads the shared libraries needed by a program, prepares the program to run, and then runs it. The name of the dynamic linker will usually be `ld-linux.so.2`. On platforms that are less prevalent, the name might be `ld.so.1`, and newer 64 bit platforms might be named something else entirely. The name of the platform's dynamic linker can be determined by looking in the `/lib` directory on the host system. A sure-fire way to determine the name is to inspect a random binary from the host system by running: `readelf -l <name of binary> | grep interpreter` and noting the output. The authoritative reference covering all platforms is in the `shlib-versions` file in the root of the Glibc source tree.

Some key technical points of how the Chapter 5 build method works:

- The process is similar in principle to cross-compiling, whereby tools installed in the same prefix work in cooperation, and thus utilize a little GNU “magic”
- Careful manipulation of the standard linker's library search path ensures programs are linked only against chosen libraries
- Careful manipulation of **gcc**'s `specs` file tells the compiler which target dynamic linker will be used

Binutils is installed first because the **configure** runs of both GCC and Glibc perform various feature tests on the assembler and linker to determine which software features to enable or disable. This is more important than one might first realize. An incorrectly configured GCC or Glibc can result in a subtly broken toolchain, where the impact of such breakage might not show up until near the end of the build of an entire distribution. A test suite failure will usually highlight this error before too much additional work is performed.

Binutils installs its assembler and linker in two locations, `/tools/bin` and `/tools/$TARGET_TRIPLET/bin`. The tools in one location are hard linked to the other. An important facet of the linker is its library search order. Detailed information can be obtained from `ld` by passing it the `--verbose` flag. For example, an `ld --verbose | grep SEARCH` will illustrate the current search paths and their order. It shows which files are linked by `ld` by compiling a dummy program and passing the `--verbose` switch to the linker. For example, `gcc dummy.c -Wl,--verbose 2>&1 | grep succeeded` will show all the files successfully opened during the linking.

The next package installed is GCC. An example of what can be seen during its run of `configure` is:

```
checking what assembler to use...
      /tools/i686-pc-linux-gnu/bin/as
checking what linker to use... /tools/i686-pc-linux-gnu/bin/ld
```

This is important for the reasons mentioned above. It also demonstrates that GCC's `configure` script does not search the `PATH` directories to find which tools to use. However, during the actual operation of `gcc` itself, the same search paths are not necessarily used. To find out which standard linker `gcc` will use, run: `gcc -print-prog-name=ld`.

Detailed information can be obtained from `gcc` by passing it the `-v` command line option while compiling a dummy program. For example, `gcc -v dummy.c` will show detailed information about the preprocessor, compilation, and assembly stages, including `gcc`'s included search paths and their order.

The next package installed is Glibc. The most important considerations for building Glibc are the compiler, binary tools, and kernel headers. The compiler is generally not an issue since Glibc will always use the `gcc` found in a `PATH` directory. The binary tools and kernel headers can be a bit more complicated. Therefore, take no risks and use the available `configure` switches to enforce the correct selections. After the run of `configure`, check the contents of the `config.make` file in the `glibc-build` directory for all important details. Note the use of `CC="gcc -B/tools/bin/"` to control which binary tools are used and the use of the `-nostdinc` and `-isystem` flags to control the compiler's include search path. These items highlight an important aspect of the Glibc package—it is very self-sufficient in terms of its build machinery and generally does not rely on toolchain defaults.

After the Glibc installation, make some adjustments to ensure that searching and linking take place only within the `/tools` prefix. Install an adjusted `ld`, which has a hard-wired search path limited to `/tools/lib`. Then amend `gcc`'s `specs` file to point to the new dynamic linker in `/tools/lib`. This last step is vital to the whole process. As mentioned above, a hard-wired path to a dynamic linker is embedded into every Executable and Link Format (ELF)-shared executable. This can be inspected by running: `readelf -l <name of binary> | grep interpreter`. Amending `gcc`'s `specs` file ensures that every program compiled from here through the end of this chapter will use the new dynamic linker in `/tools/lib`.

The need to use the new dynamic linker is also the reason why the `Specs` patch is applied for the second pass of GCC. Failure to do so will result in the GCC programs themselves having the name of the dynamic linker from the host system's `/lib` directory embedded into them, which would defeat the goal of getting away from the host.

During the second pass of Binutils, we are able to utilize the `--with-lib-path` `configure` switch to control `ld`'s library search path. From this point onwards, the core toolchain is self-contained and self-hosted. The remainder of the Chapter 5 packages all build against the new Glibc in `/tools`.

Upon entering the chroot environment in Chapter 6, the first major package to be installed is Glibc, due to its self-sufficient nature mentioned above. Once this Glibc is installed into `/usr`, perform a quick changeover of the toolchain defaults, then proceed in building the rest of the target LFS system.

## 5.3. Binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2 - Pass 1

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

**Approximate build time:** 1.0 SBU

**Required disk space:** 170 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 5.3.1. Installation of Binutils

It is important that Binutils be the first package compiled because both Glibc and GCC perform various tests on the available linker and assembler to determine which of their own features to enable.

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the `-march` and `-mcpu` options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as `CFLAGS` and `CXXFLAGS`, unset them when building Binutils.

The Binutils documentation recommends building Binutils outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir ../binutils-build
cd ../binutils-build
```



#### Note

In order for the SBU values listed in the rest of the book to be of any use, measure the time it takes to build this package from the configuration, up to and including the first install. To achieve this easily, wrap the three commands in a `time` command like this: `time { ./configure ... && make && make install; }`.

Now prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
../binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2/configure --prefix=/tools --disable-nls
```

The meaning of the configure options:

`--prefix=/tools`

This tells the configure script to prepare to install the Binutils programs in the `/tools` directory.

`--disable-nls`

This disables internationalization as `i18n` is not needed for the temporary tools.

Continue with compiling the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. Ordinarily we would now run the test suite, but at this early stage the test suite framework (Tcl, Expect, and DejaGNU) is not yet in place. The benefits of running the tests at this point are minimal since the programs from this first pass will soon be replaced by those from the second.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Next, prepare the linker for the “Adjusting” phase later on:

```
make -C ld clean
make -C ld LIB_PATH=/tools/lib
```

The meaning of the make parameters:

*-C ld clean*

This tells the make program to remove all compiled files in the `ld` subdirectory.

*-C ld LIB\_PATH=/tools/lib*

This option rebuilds everything in the `ld` subdirectory. Specifying the `LIB_PATH` Makefile variable on the command line allows us to override the default value and point it to the temporary tools location. The value of this variable specifies the linker's default library search path. This preparation is used later in the chapter.



### **Warning**

*Do not* remove the Binutils build and source directories yet. These will be needed again in their current state later in this chapter.

Details on this package are located in Section 6.13.2, “Contents of Binutils.”

## 5.4. GCC-3.4.3 - Pass 1

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

**Approximate build time:** 4.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 219 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 5.4.1. Installation of GCC

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the *-march* and *-mcpu* options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as *CFLAGS* and *CXXFLAGS*, unset them when building GCC.

The GCC documentation recommends building GCC outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir ../gcc-build
cd ../gcc-build
```

Prepare GCC for compilation:

```
../gcc-3.4.3/configure --prefix=/tools \
  --libexecdir=/tools/lib --with-local-prefix=/tools \
  --disable-nls --enable-shared --enable-languages=c
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--with-local-prefix=/tools*

The purpose of this switch is to remove */usr/local/include* from **gcc**'s include search path. This is not absolutely essential, however, it helps to minimize the influence of the host system.

*--enable-shared*

This switch allows the building of *libgcc\_s.so.1* and *libgcc\_eh.a*. Having *libgcc\_eh.a* available ensures that the configure script for Glibc (the next package we compile) produces the proper results.

*--enable-languages=c*

This option ensures that only the C compiler is built.

Continue with compiling the package:

```
make bootstrap
```

The meaning of the make parameters:

*bootstrap*

This target does not just compile GCC, but compiles it several times. It uses the programs compiled in a first round to compile itself a second time, and then again a third time. It then compares these second and third compiles to make sure it can reproduce itself flawlessly. This also implies that it was compiled correctly.

Compilation is now complete. At this point, the test suite would normally be run, but, as mentioned before, the test suite framework is not in place yet. The benefits of running the tests at this point are minimal since the programs from this first pass will soon be replaced.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

As a finishing touch, create a symlink. Many programs and scripts run **cc** instead of **gcc**, which is used to keep programs generic and therefore usable on all kinds of UNIX systems where the GNU C compiler is not always installed. Running **cc** leaves the system administrator free to decide which C compiler to install.

```
ln -s gcc /tools/bin/cc
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.14.2, “Contents of GCC.”



## 5.5. Linux-Libc-Headers-2.6.11.2

The Linux-Libc-Headers package contains the “sanitized” kernel headers.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 26.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Coreutils

### 5.5.1. Installation of Linux-Libc-Headers

For years it has been common practice to use “raw” kernel headers (straight from a kernel tarball) in `/usr/include`, but over the last few years, the kernel developers have taken a strong stance that this should not be done. This gave birth to the Linux-Libc-Headers Project, which was designed to maintain an Application Programming Interface (API) stable version of the Linux headers.

Install the header files:

```
cp -R include/asm-i386 /tools/include/asm
cp -R include/linux /tools/include
```

If your architecture is not i386 (compatible), adjust the first command accordingly.

Details on this package are located in Section 6.9.2, “Contents of Linux-Libc-Headers.”

## 5.6. Glibc-2.3.4

The Glibc package contains the main C library. This library provides the basic routines for allocating memory, searching directories, opening and closing files, reading and writing files, string handling, pattern matching, arithmetic, and so on.

**Approximate build time:** 11.8 SBU

**Required disk space:** 454 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Grep, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 5.6.1. Installation of Glibc

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the *-march* and *-mcpu* options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as *CFLAGS* and *CXXFLAGS*, unset them when building Glibc.

It should be noted that compiling Glibc in any way other than the method suggested in this book puts the stability of the system at risk.

Glibc has two tests which fail when the running kernel is 2.6.11.x The problem has been determined to be with the tests themselves, not with the libc nor the kernel. If you plan to run the testsuite apply this patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.3.4-fix_test-1.patch
```

The Glibc documentation recommends building Glibc outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir ../glibc-build
cd ../glibc-build
```

Next, prepare Glibc for compilation:

```
../glibc-2.3.4/configure --prefix=/tools \
  --disable-profile --enable-add-ons \
  --enable-kernel=2.6.0 --with-binutils=/tools/bin \
  --without-gd --with-headers=/tools/include \
  --without-selinux
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--disable-profile*

This builds the libraries without profiling information. Omit this option if profiling on the temporary tools is necessary.

*--enable-add-ons*

This tells Glibc to use the NPTL add-on as its threading library.

*--enable-kernel=2.6.0*

This tells Glibc to compile the library with support for 2.6.x Linux kernels.

```
--with-binutils=/tools/bin
```

While not required, this switch ensures that there are no errors pertaining to which Binutils programs get used during the Glibc build.

```
--without-gd
```

This prevents the build of the **memusagestat** program, which insists on linking against the host's libraries (libgd, libpng, libz, etc.).

```
--with-headers=/tools/include
```

This tells Glibc to compile itself against the headers recently installed to the tools directory, so that it knows exactly what features the kernel has and can optimize itself accordingly.

```
--without-selinux
```

When building from hosts that include SELinux functionality (e.g. Fedora Core 3), Glibc will build with support for SELinux. As the LFS tools environment does not contain support for SELinux, a Glibc compiled with such support will fail to operate correctly.

During this stage the following warning might appear:

```
configure: WARNING:
*** These auxiliary programs are missing or
*** incompatible versions: msgfmt
*** some features will be disabled.
*** Check the INSTALL file for required versions.
```

The missing or incompatible **msgfmt** program is generally harmless, but it can sometimes cause issues when running the test suite. This **msgfmt** program is part of the Gettext package which the host distribution should provide. If **msgfmt** is present but deemed incompatible, upgrade the host system's Gettext package or continue without it and see if the test suite runs without problems regardless.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As mentioned earlier, running the test suites for the temporary tools installed in this chapter is not mandatory. To run the Glibc test suite (if desired), the following command will do so:

```
make check
```

For a discussion of test failures that are of particular importance, please see Section 6.11, “Glibc-2.3.4.”

In this chapter, some tests can be adversely affected by existing tools or environmental issues on the host system. Glibc test suite failures in this chapter are typically not worrisome. The Glibc installed in Chapter 6 is the one that will ultimately end up being used, so that is the one that needs to pass most tests (even in Chapter 6, some failures could still occur, for example, with the math tests).

When experiencing a failure, make a note of it, then continue by reissuing the **make check** command. The test suite should pick up where it left off and continue. This stop-start sequence can be circumvented by issuing a **make -k check** command. If using this option, be sure to log the output so that the log file can be examined for failures later.

The install stage of Glibc will issue a harmless warning at the end about the absence of `/tools/etc/ld.so.conf`. Prevent this warning with:

```
mkdir /tools/etc
touch /tools/etc/ld.so.conf
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Different countries and cultures have varying conventions for how to communicate. These conventions range from the format for representing dates and times to more complex issues, such as the language spoken. The “internationalization” of GNU programs works by locale.



### Note

If the test suites are not being run in this chapter (as per the recommendation), there is no need to install the locales now. The appropriate locales will be installed in the next chapter.

To install the Glibc locales anyway, use the following command:

```
make localedata/install-locales
```

To save time, an alternative to running the previous command (which generates and installs every locale Glibc is aware of) is to install only those locales that are wanted and needed. This can be achieved by using the `localedef` command. Information on this command is located in the `INSTALL` file in the Glibc source. However, there are a number of locales that are essential in order for the tests of future packages to pass, in particular, the `libstdc++` tests from GCC. The following instructions, instead of the `install-locales` target used above, will install the minimum set of locales necessary for the tests to run successfully:

```
mkdir -p /tools/lib/locale
localedef -i de_DE -f ISO-8859-1 de_DE
localedef -i de_DE@euro -f ISO-8859-15 de_DE@euro
localedef -i en_HK -f ISO-8859-1 en_HK
localedef -i en_PH -f ISO-8859-1 en_PH
localedef -i en_US -f ISO-8859-1 en_US
localedef -i es_MX -f ISO-8859-1 es_MX
localedef -i fa_IR -f UTF-8 fa_IR
localedef -i fr_FR -f ISO-8859-1 fr_FR
localedef -i fr_FR@euro -f ISO-8859-15 fr_FR@euro
localedef -i it_IT -f ISO-8859-1 it_IT
localedef -i ja_JP -f EUC-JP ja_JP
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.11.4, “Contents of Glibc.”

## 5.7. Adjusting the Toolchain

Now that the temporary C libraries have been installed, all tools compiled in the rest of this chapter should be linked against these libraries. In order to accomplish this, the linker and the compiler's specs file need to be adjusted.

The linker, adjusted at the end of the first pass of Binutils, is installed by running the following command from within the `binutils-build` directory:

```
make -C ld install
```

From this point onwards, everything will link only against the libraries in `/tools/lib`.



### Note

If the earlier warning to retain the Binutils source and build directories from the first pass was missed, ignore the above command. This results in a small chance that the subsequent testing programs will link against libraries on the host. This is not ideal, but it is not a major problem. The situation is corrected when the second pass of Binutils is installed later.

Now that the adjusted linker is installed, the Binutils build and source directories should be removed.

The next task is to amend the GCC specs file so that it points to the new dynamic linker. A simple sed script will accomplish this:

```
SPECFILE=`gcc --print-file specs` &&  
sed 's@ /lib/ld-linux.so.2@ /tools/lib/ld-linux.so.2@g' \  
    $SPECFILE > tempspecfile &&  
mv -f tempspecfile $SPECFILE &&  
unset SPECFILE
```

Alternatively, the specs file can be edited by hand. This is done by replacing every occurrence of `“/lib/ld-linux.so.2”` with `“/tools/lib/ld-linux.so.2”`

Be sure to visually inspect the specs file in order to verify the intended changes have been made.



### Important

If working on a platform where the name of the dynamic linker is something other than `ld-linux.so.2`, replace `“ld-linux.so.2”` with the name of the platform's dynamic linker in the above commands. Refer back to Section 5.2, “Toolchain Technical Notes,” if necessary.

There is a possibility that some include files from the host system have found their way into GCC's private include dir. This can happen as a result of GCC's “fixincludes” process, which runs as part of the GCC build. This is explained in more detail later in this chapter. Run the following command to eliminate this possibility:

```
rm -f /tools/lib/gcc/*/*/include/{pthread.h,bits/sigthread.h}
```



## Caution

At this point, it is imperative to stop and ensure that the basic functions (compiling and linking) of the new toolchain are working as expected. To perform a sanity check, run the following commands:

```
echo 'main(){}' > dummy.c
cc dummy.c
readelf -l a.out | grep ': /tools'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be of the form:

```
[Requesting program interpreter:
 /tools/lib/ld-linux.so.2]
```

Note that `/tools/lib` appears as the prefix of the dynamic linker.

If the output is not shown as above or there was no output at all, then something is wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. This issue must be resolved before continuing on. First, perform the sanity check again, using `gcc` instead of `cc`. If this works, then the `/tools/bin/cc` symlink is missing. Revisit Section 5.4, “GCC-3.4.3 - Pass 1,” and install the symlink. Next, ensure that the `PATH` is correct. This can be checked by running `echo $PATH` and verifying that `/tools/bin` is at the head of the list. If the `PATH` is wrong it could mean that you are not logged in as user `lfs` or that something went wrong back in Section 4.4, “Setting Up the Environment.” Another option is that something may have gone wrong with the specs file amendment above. In this case, redo the specs file amendment.

Once all is well, clean up the test files:

```
rm dummy.c a.out
```

## 5.8. Tcl-8.4.9

The Tcl package contains the Tool Command Language.

**Approximate build time:** 0.9 SBU

**Required disk space:** 23.3 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.8.1. Installation of Tcl

This package and the next two (Expect and DejaGNU) are installed to support running the test suites for GCC and Binutils. Installing three packages for testing purposes may seem excessive, but it is very reassuring, if not essential, to know that the most important tools are working properly. Even if the test suites are not run in this chapter (they are not mandatory), these packages are required to run the test suites in Chapter 6.

Prepare Tcl for compilation:

```
cd unix
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Build the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **TZ=UTC make test**. The Tcl test suite is known to experience failures under certain host conditions that are not fully understood. Therefore, test suite failures here are not surprising, and are not considered critical. The *TZ=UTC* parameter sets the time zone to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), also known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), but only for the duration of the test suite run. This ensures that the clock tests are exercised correctly. Details on the TZ environment variable are provided in Chapter 7.

Install the package:

```
make install
```



#### Warning

*Do not* remove the `tcl8.4.9` source directory yet, as the next package will need its internal headers.

Set a variable containing the full path of the current directory. The next package, Expect, will use this variable to find Tcl's headers.

```
cd ..
export TCLPATH=`pwd`
```

Now make a necessary symbolic link:

```
ln -s tclsh8.4 /tools/bin/tclsh
```

## 5.8.2. Contents of Tcl

**Installed programs:** tclsh (link to tclsh8.4) and tclsh8.4

**Installed library:** libtcl8.4.so

### Short Descriptions

**tclsh8.4**            The Tcl command shell

**tclsh**              A link to tclsh8.4

**libtcl8.4.so**      The Tcl library



## 5.9. Expect-5.43.0

The Expect package contains a program for carrying out scripted dialogues with other interactive programs.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.0 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Tcl

### 5.9.1. Installation of Expect

First, fix a bug that can result in false failures during the GCC test suite run:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../expect-5.43.0-spawn-1.patch
```

Now prepare Expect for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --with-tcl=/tools/lib \
  --with-tclinclude=$TCLPATH --with-x=no
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--with-tcl=/tools/lib*

This ensures that the configure script finds the Tcl installation in the temporary tools location instead of possibly locating an existing one on the host system.

*--with-tclinclude=\$TCLPATH*

This explicitly tells Expect where to find Tcl's source directory and internal headers. Using this option avoids conditions where **configure** fails because it cannot automatically discover the location of the Tcl source directory.

*--with-x=no*

This tells the configure script not to search for Tk (the Tcl GUI component) or the X Window System libraries, both of which may reside on the host system but will not exist in the temporary environment.

Build the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**. Note that the Expect test suite is known to experience failures under certain host conditions that are not within our control. Therefore, test suite failures here are not surprising and are not considered critical.

Install the package:

```
make SCRIPTS="" install
```

The meaning of the make parameter:

*SCRIPTS=""*

This prevents installation of the supplementary expect scripts, which are not needed.

Now remove the TCLPATH variable:

```
unset TCLPATH
```

The source directories of both Tcl and Expect can now be removed.

## 5.9.2. Contents of Expect

**Installed program:** expect

**Installed library:** libexpect-5.42.a

### Short Descriptions

<b>expect</b>	Communicates with other interactive programs according to a script
<code>libexpect-5.42.a</code>	Contains functions that allow Expect to be used as a Tcl extension or to be used directly from C or C++ (without Tcl)

## 5.10. DejaGNU-1.4.4

The DejaGNU package contains a framework for testing other programs.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.1 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.10.1. Installation of DejaGNU

Prepare DejaGNU for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Build and install the package:

```
make install
```

### 5.10.2. Contents of DejaGNU

**Installed program:** runtest

#### Short Descriptions

**runtest**      A wrapper script that locates the proper **expect** shell and then runs DejaGNU

## 5.11. GCC-3.4.3 - Pass 2

**Approximate build time:** 11.0 SBU

**Required disk space:** 292 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 5.11.1. Re-installation of GCC

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the `-march` and `-mcpu` options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as `CFLAGS` and `CXXFLAGS`, unset them when building GCC.

The tools required to test GCC and Binutils—Tcl, Expect and DejaGNU—are installed now. GCC and Binutils can now be rebuilt, linking them against the new Glibc and testing them properly (if running the test suites in this chapter). Please note that these test suites are highly dependent on properly functioning PTYs which are provided by the host. PTYs are most commonly implemented via the `devpts` file system. Check to see if the host system is set up correctly in this regard by performing a quick test:

```
expect -c "spawn ls"
```

The response might be:

```
The system has no more ptys.
Ask your system administrator to create more.
```

If the above message is received, the host does not have its PTYs set up properly. In this case, there is no point in running the test suites for GCC and Binutils until this issue is resolved. Please consult the LFS FAQ at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/faq.html#no-ptys> for more information on how to get PTYs working.

First correct a known problem and make an essential adjustment:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-3.4.3-no_fixincludes-1.patch
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-3.4.3-specs-2.patch
```

The first patch disables the GCC `fixincludes` script. This was briefly mentioned earlier, but a more in-depth explanation of the `fixincludes` process is warranted here. Under normal circumstances, the GCC `fixincludes` script scans the system for header files that need to be fixed. It might find that some Glibc header files on the host system need to be fixed, and will fix them and put them in the GCC private include directory. In Chapter 6, after the newer Glibc has been installed, this private include directory will be searched before the system include directory. This may result in GCC finding the fixed headers from the host system, which most likely will not match the Glibc version used for the LFS system.

The second patch changes GCC's default location of the dynamic linker (typically `ld-linux.so.2`). It also removes `/usr/include` from GCC's include search path. Patching now rather than adjusting the specs file after installation ensures that the new dynamic linker is used during the actual build of GCC. That is, all of the final (and temporary) binaries created during the build will link against the new Glibc.

**Important**

The above patches are critical in ensuring a successful overall build. Do not forget to apply them.

Create a separate build directory again:

```
mkdir ../gcc-build
cd ../gcc-build
```

Before starting to build GCC, remember to unset any environment variables that override the default optimization flags.

Now prepare GCC for compilation:

```
../gcc-3.4.3/configure --prefix=/tools \
  --libexecdir=/tools/lib --with-local-prefix=/tools \
  --enable-clocale=gnu --enable-shared \
  --enable-threads=posix --enable-__cxa_atexit \
  --enable-languages=c,c++ --disable-libstdcxx-pch
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

`--enable-clocale=gnu`

This option ensures the correct locale model is selected for the C++ libraries under all circumstances. If the configure script finds the *de\_DE* locale installed, it will select the correct gnu locale model. However, if the *de\_DE* locale is not installed, there is the risk of building Application Binary Interface (ABI)-incompatible C++ libraries because the incorrect generic locale model may be selected.

`--enable-threads=posix`

This enables C++ exception handling for multi-threaded code.

`--enable-__cxa_atexit`

This option allows use of *\_\_cxa\_atexit*, rather than *atexit*, to register C++ destructors for local statics and global objects. This option is essential for fully standards-compliant handling of destructors. It also affects the C++ ABI, and therefore results in C++ shared libraries and C++ programs that are interoperable with other Linux distributions.

`--enable-languages=c,c++`

This option ensures that both the C and C++ compilers are built.

`--disable-libstdcxx-pch`

Do not build the pre-compiled header (PCH) for `libstdc++. It takes up a lot of space, and we have no use for it.`

Compile the package:

```
make
```

There is no need to use the *bootstrap* target now because the compiler being used to compile this GCC was built from the exact same version of the GCC sources used earlier.

Compilation is now complete. As previously mentioned, running the test suites for the temporary tools compiled in this chapter is not mandatory. To run the GCC test suite anyway, use the following command:

```
make -k check
```

The `-k` flag is used to make the test suite run through to completion and not stop at the first failure. The GCC test suite is very comprehensive and is almost guaranteed to generate a few failures. To receive a summary of the test suite results, run:

```
../gcc-3.4.3/contrib/test_summary
```

For only the summaries, pipe the output through `grep -A7 Summ.`

Results can be compared with those located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/build-logs/6.1/>.

A few unexpected failures cannot always be avoided. The GCC developers are usually aware of these issues, but have not resolved them yet. Unless the test results are vastly different from those at the above URL, it is safe to continue.

Install the package:

```
make install
```



### Note

At this point it is strongly recommended to repeat the sanity check we performed earlier in this chapter. Refer back to Section 5.7, “Adjusting the Toolchain,” and repeat the test compilation. If the result is wrong, the most likely reason is that the GCC Specs patch was not properly applied.

Details on this package are located in Section 6.14.2, “Contents of GCC.”

## 5.12. Binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2 - Pass 2

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

**Approximate build time:** 1.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 114 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 5.12.1. Re-installation of Binutils

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the *-march* and *-mcpu* options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as *CFLAGS* and *CXXFLAGS*, unset them when building Binutils.

Create a separate build directory again:

```
mkdir ../binutils-build
cd ../binutils-build
```

Prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
../binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2/configure --prefix=/tools \
  --disable-nls --enable-shared --with-lib-path=/tools/lib
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

```
--with-lib-path=/tools/lib
```

This tells the configure script to specify the library search path during the compilation of Binutils, resulting in */tools/lib* being passed to the linker. This prevents the linker from searching through library directories on the host.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. As discussed earlier, running the test suite is not mandatory for the temporary tools here in this chapter. To run the Binutils test suite anyway, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Now prepare the linker for the “Re-adjusting” phase in the next chapter:

```
make -C ld clean
make -C ld LIB_PATH=/usr/lib:/lib
```



**Warning**

*Do not* remove the Binutils source and build directories yet. These directories will be needed again in the next chapter in their current state.

Details on this package are located in Section 6.13.2, “Contents of Binutils.”



## 5.13. Gawk-3.1.4

The Gawk package contains programs for manipulating text files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 16.4 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.13.1. Installation of Gawk

Prepare Gawk for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.20.2, “Contents of Gawk.”

## 5.14. Coreutils-5.2.1

The Coreutils package contains utilities for showing and setting the basic system characteristics.

**Approximate build time:** 0.9 SBU

**Required disk space:** 53.3 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, and Sed

### 5.14.1. Installation of Coreutils

Prepare Coreutils for compilation:

```
DEFAULT_POSIX2_VERSION=199209 ./configure --prefix=/tools
```

This package has an issue when compiled against versions of Glibc later than 2.3.2. Some of the Coreutils utilities (such as **head**, **tail**, and **sort**) will reject their traditional syntax, a syntax that has been in use for approximately 30 years. This old syntax is so pervasive that compatibility should be preserved until the many places where it is used can be updated. Backwards compatibility is achieved by setting the `DEFAULT_POSIX2_VERSION` environment variable to “199209” in the above command. If you do not want Coreutils to be backwards compatible with the traditional syntax, then omit setting the `DEFAULT_POSIX2_VERSION` environment variable. It is important to remember that doing so will have consequences, including the need to patch the many packages that still use the old syntax. Therefore, it is recommended that the instructions be followed exactly as given above.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make RUN\_EXPENSIVE\_TESTS=yes check**. The `RUN_EXPENSIVE_TESTS=yes` parameter tells the test suite to run several additional tests that are considered relatively expensive (in terms of CPU power and memory usage) on some platforms, but generally are not a problem on Linux.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.15.2, “Contents of Coreutils.”

## 5.15. Bzip2-1.0.3

The Bzip2 package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. Compressing text files with **bzip2** yields a much better compression percentage than with the traditional **gzip**.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 3.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, and Make

### 5.15.1. Installation of Bzip2

The Bzip2 package does not contain a **configure** script. Compile it with:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Install the package:

```
make PREFIX=/tools install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.40.2, “Contents of Bzip2.”

## 5.16. Gzip-1.3.5

The Gzip package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.2 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.16.1. Installation of Gzip

Prepare Gzip for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.46.2, “Contents of Gzip.”

## 5.17. Diffutils-2.8.1

The Diffutils package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 5.6 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.17.1. Installation of Diffutils

Prepare Diffutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.41.2, “Contents of Diffutils.”

## 5.18. Findutils-4.2.23

The Findutils package contains programs to find files. These programs are provided to recursively search through a directory tree and to create, maintain, and search a database (often faster than the recursive find, but unreliable if the database has not been recently updated).

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make and Sed

### 5.18.1. Installation of Findutils

Prepare Findutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.19.2, “Contents of Findutils.”

## 5.19. Make-3.80

The Make package contains a program for compiling packages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 7.1 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, and Sed

### 5.19.1. Installation of Make

Prepare Make for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.49.2, “Contents of Make.”

## 5.20. Grep-2.5.1a

The Grep package contains programs for searching through files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Make, Sed, and Texinfo

### 5.20.1. Installation of Grep

Prepare Grep for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools \  
--disable-perl-regexp
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--disable-perl-regexp*

This ensures that the **grep** program does not get linked against a Perl Compatible Regular Expression (PCRE) library that may be present on the host but will not be available once we enter the **chroot** environment.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.44.2, “Contents of Grep.”



## 5.21. Sed-4.1.4

The Sed package contains a stream editor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.4 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Texinfo

### 5.21.1. Installation of Sed

Prepare Sed for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.28.2, “Contents of Sed.”

## 5.22. Gettext-0.14.3

The Gettext package contains utilities for internationalization and localization. These allow programs to be compiled with NLS (Native Language Support), enabling them to output messages in the user's native language.

**Approximate build time:** 0.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 63.0 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.22.1. Installation of Gettext

Prepare Gettext for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --disable-libasprintf \
--without-csharp
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--disable-libasprintf*

This flag tells Gettext not to build the `asprintf` library. Because nothing in this chapter or the next requires this library and Gettext gets rebuilt later, exclude it to save time and space.

*--without-csharp*

This ensures that Gettext does not build support for the C# compiler which may be present on the host but will not be available once we enter the **chroot** environment.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. This takes quite some time, around 7 SBUs. The Gettext test suite is known to experience failures under certain host conditions, for example when it finds a Java compiler on the host. An experimental patch to disable Java is available from the LFS Patches project at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/>.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.30.2, “Contents of Gettext.”

## 5.23. Ncurses-5.4

The Ncurses package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens.

**Approximate build time:** 0.7 SBU

**Required disk space:** 27.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.23.1. Installation of Ncurses

Prepare Ncurses for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --with-shared \  
--without-debug --without-ada --enable-overwrite
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--without-ada*

This ensures that Ncurses does not build support for the Ada compiler which may be present on the host but will not be available once we enter the **chroot** environment.

*--enable-overwrite*

This tells Ncurses to install its header files into `/tools/include`, instead of `/tools/include/ncurses`, to ensure that other packages can find the Ncurses headers successfully.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.21.2, “Contents of Ncurses.”

## 5.24. Patch-2.5.4

The Patch package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a “patch” file typically created by the **diff** program.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.24.1. Installation of Patch

Prepare Patch for compilation:

```
CPPFLAGS=-D_GNU_SOURCE ./configure --prefix=/tools
```

The preprocessor flag `-D_GNU_SOURCE` is only needed on the PowerPC platform. It can be left out on other architectures.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.51.2, “Contents of Patch.”

## 5.25. Tar-1.15.1

The Tar package contains an archiving program.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 12.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.25.1. Installation of Tar

Prepare Tar for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.57.2, “Contents of Tar.”

## 5.26. Texinfo-4.8

The Texinfo package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 14.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

### 5.26.1. Installation of Texinfo

Prepare Texinfo for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.34.2, “Contents of Texinfo.”

## 5.27. Bash-3.0

The Bash package contains the Bourne-Again SHell.

**Approximate build time:** 1.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 20.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed.

### 5.27.1. Installation of Bash

Bash has a problem when compiled against newer versions of Glibc, causing it to hang inappropriately. This patch fixes the problem:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bash-3.0-avoid_WCONTINUED-1.patch
```

Prepare Bash for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools --without-bash-malloc
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--without-bash-malloc*

This options turns off the use of Bash's memory allocation (malloc) function which is known to cause segmentation faults. By turning this option off, Bash will use the malloc functions from Glibc which are more stable.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make tests**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Make a link for the programs that use **sh** for a shell:

```
ln -s bash /tools/bin/sh
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.37.2, "Contents of Bash."

## 5.28. M4-1.4.3

The M4 package contains a macro processor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.8 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, and Sed

### 5.28.1. Installation of M4

Prepare M4 for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.24.2, “Contents of M4.”



## 5.29. Bison-2.0

The Bison package contains a parser generator.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 10.0 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, and Sed

### 5.29.1. Installation of Bison

Prepare Bison for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.25.2, “Contents of Bison.”

## 5.30. Flex-2.5.31

The Flex package contains a utility for generating programs that recognize patterns in text.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 22.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, and Sed

### 5.30.1. Installation of Flex

Flex contains several known bugs. These can be fixed with the following patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../flex-2.5.31-debian_fixes-3.patch
```

The GNU autotools will detect that the Flex source code has been modified by the previous patch and tries to update the man page accordingly. This does not work on many systems, and the default page is fine, so make sure it does not get regenerated:

```
touch doc/flex.1
```

Now prepare Flex for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/tools
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.29.2, “Contents of Flex.”

## 5.31. Util-linux-2.12q

The Util-linux package contains miscellaneous utility programs. Among them are utilities for handling file systems, consoles, partitions, and messages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Sed, and Zlib

### 5.31.1. Installation of Util-linux

Util-linux does not use the freshly installed headers and libraries from the `/tools` directory by default. This is fixed by altering the configure script:

```
sed -i 's@/usr/include@/tools/include@g' configure
```

Prepare Util-linux for compilation:

```
./configure
```

Compile some support routines:

```
make -C lib
```

Only a few of the utilities contained in this package need to be built:

```
make -C mount mount umount
make -C text-utils more
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Copy these programs to the temporary tools directory:

```
cp mount/{,u}mount text-utils/more /tools/bin
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.59.3, “Contents of Util-linux.”

## 5.32. Perl-5.8.6

The Perl package contains the Practical Extraction and Report Language.

**Approximate build time:** 0.8 SBU

**Required disk space:** 79.8 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 5.32.1. Installation of Perl

First adapt some hard-wired paths to the C library by applying the following patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../perl-5.8.6-libc-1.patch
```

Prepare Perl for compilation (make sure to get the 'IO Fcntl POSIX' part of the command correct—they are all letters):

```
./configure.gnu --prefix=/tools -Dstatic_ext='IO Fcntl POSIX'
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
-Dstatic_ext='IO Fcntl POSIX'
```

This tells Perl to build the minimum set of static extensions needed for installing and testing the Coreutils package in the next chapter.

Only a few of the utilities contained in this package need to be built:

```
make perl utilities
```

Although Perl comes with a test suite, it is not recommended to run it at this point. Only part of Perl was built and running **make test** now will cause the rest of Perl to be built as well, which is unnecessary at this point. The test suite can be run in the next chapter if desired.

Install these tools and their libraries:

```
cp perl pod/pod2man /tools/bin
mkdir -p /tools/lib/perl5/5.8.6
cp -R lib/* /tools/lib/perl5/5.8.6
```

Details on this package are located in Section 6.33.2, “Contents of Perl.”

## 5.33. Stripping

The steps in this section are optional, but if the LFS partition is rather small, it is beneficial to learn that unnecessary items can be removed. The executables and libraries built so far contain about 130 MB of unneeded debugging symbols. Remove those symbols with:

```
strip --strip-debug /tools/lib/*
strip --strip-unneeded /tools/{,s}bin/*
```

The last of the above commands will skip some twenty files, reporting that it does not recognize their file format. Most of these are scripts instead of binaries.

Take care *not* to use `--strip-unneeded` on the libraries. The static ones would be destroyed and the toolchain packages would need to be built all over again.

To save another 30 MB, remove the documentation:

```
rm -rf /tools/{info,man}
```

There will now be at least 850 MB of free space on the LFS file system that can be used to build and install Glibc in the next phase. If you can build and install Glibc, you can build and install the rest too.

## **Part III. Building the LFS System**

# Chapter 6. Installing Basic System Software

## 6.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we enter the building site and start constructing the LFS system in earnest. That is, we chroot into the temporary mini Linux system, make a few final preparations, and then begin installing the packages.

The installation of this software is straightforward. Although in many cases the installation instructions could be made shorter and more generic, we have opted to provide the full instructions for every package to minimize the possibilities for mistakes. The key to learning what makes a Linux system work is to know what each package is used for and why the user (or the system) needs it. For every installed package, a summary of its contents is given, followed by concise descriptions of each program and library the package installed.

If using the compiler optimizations provided in this chapter, please review the optimization hint at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/optimization.txt>. Compiler optimizations can make a program run slightly faster, but they may also cause compilation difficulties and problems when running the program. If a package refuses to compile when using optimization, try to compile it without optimization and see if that fixes the problem. Even if the package does compile when using optimization, there is the risk it may have been compiled incorrectly because of the complex interactions between the code and build tools. The small potential gains achieved in using compiler optimizations are often outweighed by the risks. First-time builders of LFS are encouraged to build without custom optimizations. The subsequent system will still run very fast and be stable at the same time.

The order that packages are installed in this chapter needs to be strictly followed to ensure that no program accidentally acquires a path referring to `/tools` hard-wired into it. For the same reason, do not compile packages in parallel. Compiling in parallel may save time (especially on dual-CPU machines), but it could result in a program containing a hard-wired path to `/tools`, which will cause the program to stop working when that directory is removed.

Before the installation instructions, each installation page provides information about the package, including a concise description of what it contains, approximately how long it will take to build, how much disk space is required during this building process, and any other packages needed to successfully build the package. Following the installation instructions, there is a list of programs and libraries (along with brief descriptions of these) that the package installs.

To keep track of which package installs particular files, a package manager can be used. For a general overview of different styles of package managers, please refer to <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/introduction/important.html>. For a package management method specifically geared towards LFS, we recommend [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/more\\_control\\_and\\_pkg\\_man.txt](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/more_control_and_pkg_man.txt).



### Note

The remainder of this book is to be performed while logged in as user *root* and no longer as user *lfs*. Also, double check that `$LFS` is set.

## 6.2. Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems

Various file systems exported by the kernel are used to communicate to and from the kernel itself. These file systems are virtual in that no disk space is used for them. The content of the file systems resides in memory.

Begin by creating directories onto which the file systems will be mounted:

```
mkdir -p $LFS/{proc,sys}
```

Now mount the file systems:

```
mount -t proc proc $LFS/proc  
mount -t sysfs sysfs $LFS/sys
```

Remember that if for any reason you stop working on the LFS system and start again later, it is important to check that these file systems are mounted again before entering the chroot environment.

Additional file systems will soon be mounted from within the chroot environment. To keep the host up to date, perform a “fake mount” for each of these now:

```
mount -f -t tmpfs tmpfs $LFS/dev  
mount -f -t tmpfs tmpfs $LFS/dev/shm  
mount -f -t devpts -o gid=4,mode=620 devpts $LFS/dev/pts
```



## 6.3. Entering the Chroot Environment

It is time to enter the chroot environment to begin building and installing the final LFS system. As user *root*, run the following command to enter the realm that is, at the moment, populated with only the temporary tools:

```
chroot "$LFS" /tools/bin/env -i \
  HOME=/root TERM="$TERM" PS1='\u:\w\$ ' \
  PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin:/tools/bin \
  /tools/bin/bash --login +h
```

The *-i* option given to the **env** command will clear all variables of the chroot environment. After that, only the **HOME**, **TERM**, **PS1**, and **PATH** variables are set again. The *TERM=\$TERM* construct will set the **TERM** variable inside chroot to the same value as outside chroot. This variable is needed for programs like **vim** and **less** to operate properly. If other variables are needed, such as **CFLAGS** or **CXXFLAGS**, this is a good place to set them again.

From this point on, there is no need to use the **LFS** variable anymore, because all work will be restricted to the LFS file system. This is because the Bash shell is told that **\$LFS** is now the root (**/**) directory.

Notice that **/tools/bin** comes last in the **PATH**. This means that a temporary tool will no longer be used once its final version is installed. This occurs when the shell does not “remember” the locations of executed binaries—for this reason, hashing is switched off by passing the *+h* option to **bash**.

It is important that all the commands throughout the remainder of this chapter and the following chapters are run from within the chroot environment. If you leave this environment for any reason (rebooting for example), remember to first mount the **proc** and **devpts** file systems (discussed in the previous section) and enter chroot again before continuing with the installations.

Note that the **bash** prompt will say **I have no name!** This is normal because the **/etc/passwd** file has not been created yet.

## 6.4. Changing Ownership

Currently, the `/tools` directory is owned by the user `lfs`, a user that exists only on the host system. Although the `/tools` directory can be deleted once the LFS system has been finished, it can be retained to build additional LFS systems. If the `/tools` directory is kept as is, the files are owned by a user ID without a corresponding account. This is dangerous because a user account created later could get this same user ID and would own the `/tools` directory and all the files therein, thus exposing these files to possible malicious manipulation.

To avoid this issue, add the `lfs` user to the new LFS system later when creating the `/etc/passwd` file, taking care to assign it the same user and group IDs as on the host system. Alternatively, assign the contents of the `/tools` directory to user `root` by running the following command:

```
chown -R 0:0 /tools
```

The command uses `0:0` instead of `root:root`, because **chown** is unable to resolve the name “root” until the password file has been created. This book assumes you ran this **chown** command.

## 6.5. Creating Directories

It is time to create some structure in the LFS file system. Create a standard directory tree by issuing the following commands:

```
install -d /{bin,boot,dev,etc,opt,home,lib,mnt}
install -d /{sbin,srv,usr/local,var,opt}
install -d /root -m 0750
install -d /tmp /var/tmp -m 1777
install -d /media/{floppy,cdrom}
install -d /usr/{bin,include,lib,sbin,share,src}
ln -s share/{man,doc,info} /usr
install -d /usr/share/{doc,info,locale,man}
install -d /usr/share/{misc,terminfo,zoneinfo}
install -d /usr/share/man/man{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8}
install -d /usr/local/{bin,etc,include,lib,sbin,share,src}
ln -s share/{man,doc,info} /usr/local
install -d /usr/local/share/{doc,info,locale,man}
install -d /usr/local/share/{misc,terminfo,zoneinfo}
install -d /usr/local/share/man/man{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8}
install -d /var/{lock,log,mail,run,spool}
install -d /var/{opt,cache,lib/{misc,locate},local}
install -d /opt/{bin,doc,include,info}
install -d /opt/{lib,man/man{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8}}
```

Directories are, by default, created with permission mode 755, but this is not desirable for all directories. In the commands above, two changes are made—one to the home directory of user *root*, and another to the directories for temporary files.

The first mode change ensures that not just anybody can enter the `/root` directory—the same as a normal user would do with his or her home directory. The second mode change makes sure that any user can write to the `/tmp` and `/var/tmp` directories, but cannot remove another user's files from them. The latter is prohibited by the so-called “sticky bit,” the highest bit (1) in the 1777 bit mask.

### 6.5.1. FHS Compliance Note

The directory tree is based on the Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS) (available at <http://www.pathname.com/fhs/>). In addition to the tree created above, this standard stipulates the existence of `/usr/local/games` and `/usr/share/games`. The FHS is not precise as to the structure of the `/usr/local/share` subdirectory, so we create only the directories that are needed. However, feel free to create these directories if you prefer to conform more strictly to the FHS.

## 6.6. Creating Essential Symlinks

Some programs use hard-wired paths to programs which do not exist yet. In order to satisfy these programs, create a number of symbolic links which will be replaced by real files throughout the course of this chapter after the software has been installed.

```
ln -s /tools/bin/{bash,cat,pwd,stty} /bin
ln -s /tools/bin/perl /usr/bin
ln -s /tools/lib/libgcc_s.so{,.1} /usr/lib
ln -s bash /bin/sh
```

## 6.7. Creating the passwd, group, and log Files

In order for user *root* to be able to login and for the name “root” to be recognized, there must be relevant entries in the `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/group` files.

Create the `/etc/passwd` file by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/passwd << "EOF"
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash
EOF
```

The actual password for *root* (the “x” used here is just a placeholder) will be set later.

Create the `/etc/group` file by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:
sys:x:2:
kmem:x:3:
tty:x:4:
tape:x:5:
daemon:x:6:
floppy:x:7:
disk:x:8:
lp:x:9:
dialout:x:10:
audio:x:11:
video:x:12:
utmp:x:13:
usb:x:14:
EOF
```

The created groups are not part of any standard—they are groups decided on in part by the requirements of the Udev configuration in the next section, and in part by common convention employed by a number of existing Linux distributions. The Linux Standard Base (LSB, available at <http://www.linuxbase.org>) recommends only that, besides the group “root” with a Group ID (GID) of 0, a group “bin” with a GID of 1 be present. All other group names and GIDs can be chosen freely by the system administrator since well-written programs do not depend on GID numbers, but rather use the group's name.

To remove the “I have no name!” prompt, start a new shell. Since a full Glibc was installed in Chapter 5 and the `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/group` files have been created, user name and group name resolution will now work.

```
exec /tools/bin/bash --login +h
```

Note the use of the `+h` directive. This tells **bash** not to use its internal path hashing. Without this directive, **bash** would remember the paths to binaries it has executed. To ensure the use of the newly compiled binaries as soon as they are installed, the `+h` directive will be used for the duration of this chapter.

The **login**, **agetty**, and **init** programs (and others) use a number of log files to record information such as who was logged into the system and when. However, these programs will not write to the log files if they do not already exist. Initialize the log files and give them proper permissions:

```
touch /var/run/utmp /var/log/{btmp,lastlog,wtmp}  
chgrp utmp /var/run/utmp /var/log/lastlog  
chmod 664 /var/run/utmp /var/log/lastlog
```

The `/var/run/utmp` file records the users that are currently logged in. The `/var/log/wtmp` file records all logins and logouts. The `/var/log/lastlog` file records when each user last logged in. The `/var/log/btmp` file records the bad login attempts.

## 6.8. Populating /dev

### 6.8.1. Creating Initial Device Nodes

When the kernel boots the system, it requires the presence of a few device nodes, in particular the `console` and `null` devices. Create these by running the following commands:

```
mknod -m 600 /dev/console c 5 1
mknod -m 666 /dev/null c 1 3
```

### 6.8.2. Mounting tmpfs and Populating /dev

The recommended method of populating the `/dev` directory with devices is to mount a virtual filesystem (such as `tmpfs`) on the `/dev` directory, and allow the devices to be created dynamically on that virtual filesystem as they are detected or accessed. This is generally done during the boot process. Since this new system has not been booted, it is necessary to do what the `LFS-Bootscripts` package would otherwise do by mounting `/dev`:

```
mount -n -t tmpfs none /dev
```

The `Udev` package is what actually creates the devices in the `/dev` directory. Since it will not be installed until later on in the process, manually create the minimal set of device nodes needed to complete the building of this system:

```
mknod -m 622 /dev/console c 5 1
mknod -m 666 /dev/null c 1 3
mknod -m 666 /dev/zero c 1 5
mknod -m 666 /dev/ptmx c 5 2
mknod -m 666 /dev/tty c 5 0
mknod -m 444 /dev/random c 1 8
mknod -m 444 /dev/urandom c 1 9
chown root:tty /dev/{console,ptmx,tty}
```

There are some symlinks and directories required by `LFS` that are created during system startup by the `LFS-Bootscripts` package. Since this is a `chroot` environment and not a booted environment, those symlinks and directories need to be created here:

```
ln -s /proc/self/fd /dev/fd
ln -s /proc/self/fd/0 /dev/stdin
ln -s /proc/self/fd/1 /dev/stdout
ln -s /proc/self/fd/2 /dev/stderr
ln -s /proc/kcore /dev/core
mkdir /dev/pts
mkdir /dev/shm
```

Finally, mount the proper virtual (kernel) file systems on the newly-created directories:

```
mount -t devpts -o gid=4,mode=620 none /dev/pts
mount -t tmpfs none /dev/shm
```

The **mount** commands executed above may result in the following warning message:

```
can't open /etc/fstab: No such file or directory.
```

This file—`/etc/fstab`—has not been created yet but is also not required for the file systems to be properly mounted. As such, the warning can be safely ignored.



## 6.9. Linux-Libc-Headers-2.6.11.2

The Linux-Libc-Headers package contains the “sanitized” kernel headers.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 26.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Coreutils

### 6.9.1. Installation of Linux-Libc-Headers

For years it has been common practice to use “raw” kernel headers (straight from a kernel tarball) in `/usr/include`, but over the last few years, the kernel developers have taken a strong stance that this should not be done. This gave birth to the Linux-Libc-Headers Project, which was designed to maintain an API stable version of the Linux headers.

Install the header files:

```
cp -R include/asm-i386 /usr/include/asm
cp -R include/linux /usr/include
```

Ensure that all the headers are owned by root:

```
chown -R root:root /usr/include/{asm,linux}
```

Make sure the users can read the headers:

```
find /usr/include/{asm,linux} -type d -exec chmod 755 {} \;
find /usr/include/{asm,linux} -type f -exec chmod 644 {} \;
```

### 6.9.2. Contents of Linux-Libc-Headers

**Installed headers:** `/usr/include/{asm,linux}/*.h`

#### Short Descriptions

`/usr/include/{asm,linux}/*.h` The Linux headers API

## 6.10. Man-pages-2.01

The Man-pages package contains over 1,200 man pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 25.8 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, and Make

### 6.10.1. Installation of Man-pages

Install Man-pages by running:

```
make install
```

### 6.10.2. Contents of Man-pages

**Installed files:** various man pages

#### Short Descriptions

`man pages` Describe the C and C++ functions, important device files, and significant configuration files

## 6.11. Glibc-2.3.4

The Glibc package contains the main C library. This library provides the basic routines for allocating memory, searching directories, opening and closing files, reading and writing files, string handling, pattern matching, arithmetic, and so on.

**Approximate build time:** 12.3 SBU

**Required disk space:** 476

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Grep, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 6.11.1. Installation of Glibc

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the *-march* and *-mcpu* options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as *CFLAGS* and *CXXFLAGS*, unset them when building Glibc.

The Glibc build system is self-contained and will install perfectly, even though the compiler specs file and linker are still pointing at */tools*. The specs and linker cannot be adjusted before the Glibc install because the Glibc autoconf tests would give false results and defeat the goal of achieving a clean build.

The linuxthreads tarball contains the man pages for the threading libraries installed by Glibc. Unpack the tarball from within the Glibc source directory:

```
tar -xjvf /sources/glibc-linuxthreads-2.3.4.tar.bz2
```

Glibc has two tests which fail when the running kernel is 2.6.11.x The problem has been determined to be with the tests themselves, not with the libc nor the kernel. This patch fixes the problem:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.3.4-fix_test-1.patch
```

The Glibc documentation recommends building Glibc outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir ../glibc-build
cd ../glibc-build
```

Prepare Glibc for compilation:

```
../glibc-2.3.4/configure --prefix=/usr \
  --disable-profile --enable-add-ons \
  --enable-kernel=2.6.0 --libexecdir=/usr/lib/glibc
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

```
--libexecdir=/usr/lib/glibc
```

This changes the location of the **pt\_chown** program from its default of */usr/libexec* to */usr/lib/glibc*.

Compile the package:

```
make
```



### Important

In this section, the test suite for Glibc is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstance.

Test the results:

```
make check
```

The Glibc test suite is highly dependent on certain functions of the host system, in particular the kernel. In general, the Glibc test suite is always expected to pass. However, in certain circumstances, some failures are unavoidable. This is a list of the most common issues:

- The *math* tests sometimes fail when running on systems where the CPU is not a relatively new genuine Intel or authentic AMD. Certain optimization settings are also known to be a factor here.
- The *gettext* test sometimes fails due to host system issues. The exact reasons are not yet clear.
- If you have mounted the LFS partition with the *noatime* option, the *atime* test will fail. As mentioned in Section 2.4, “Mounting the New Partition”, do not use the *noatime* option while building LFS.
- When running on older and slower hardware, some tests can fail because of test timeouts being exceeded.

Though it is a harmless message, the install stage of Glibc will complain about the absence of `/etc/ld.so.conf`. Prevent this warning with:

```
touch /etc/ld.so.conf
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

The locales that can make the system respond in a different language were not installed by the above command. Install this with:

```
make localedata/install-locales
```

To save time, an alternative to running the previous command (which generates and installs every locale Glibc is aware of) is to install only those locales that are wanted and needed. This can be achieved by using the **localedef** command. Information on this command is located in the `INSTALL` file in the Glibc source. However, there are a number of locales that are essential in order for the tests of future packages to pass, in particular, the *libstdc++* tests from GCC. The following instructions, instead of the *install-locales* target used above, will install the minimum set of locales necessary for the tests to run successfully:

```
mkdir -p /usr/lib/locale
localedef -i de_DE -f ISO-8859-1 de_DE
localedef -i de_DE@euro -f ISO-8859-15 de_DE@euro
localedef -i en_HK -f ISO-8859-1 en_HK
localedef -i en_PH -f ISO-8859-1 en_PH
```

```

localedef -i en_US -f ISO-8859-1 en_US
localedef -i es_MX -f ISO-8859-1 es_MX
localedef -i fa_IR -f UTF-8 fa_IR
localedef -i fr_FR -f ISO-8859-1 fr_FR
localedef -i fr_FR@euro -f ISO-8859-15 fr_FR@euro
localedef -i it_IT -f ISO-8859-1 it_IT
localedef -i ja_JP -f EUC-JP ja_JP

```

Some locales installed by the **make localedata/install-locales** command above are not properly supported by some applications that are in the LFS and BLFS books. Because of the various problems that arise due to application programmers making assumptions that break in such locales, LFS should not be used in locales that utilize multibyte character sets (including UTF-8) or right-to-left writing order. Numerous unofficial and unstable patches are required to fix these problems, and it has been decided by the LFS developers not to support such complex locales. This applies to the ja\_JP and fa\_IR locales as well—they have been installed only for GCC and Gettext tests to pass, and the **watch** program (part of the Procps package) does not work properly in them. Various attempts to circumvent these restrictions are documented in internationalization-related hints.

Build the linuxthreads man pages, which are a great reference on the threading API (applicable to NPTL as well):

```
make -C ../glibc-2.3.4/linuxthreads/man
```

Install these pages:

```
make -C ../glibc-2.3.4/linuxthreads/man install
```

## 6.11.2. Configuring Glibc

The `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file needs to be created because, although Glibc provides defaults when this file is missing or corrupt, the Glibc defaults do not work well in a networked environment. The time zone also needs to be configured.

Create a new file `/etc/nsswitch.conf` by running the following:

```

cat > /etc/nsswitch.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/nsswitch.conf

passwd: files
group: files
shadow: files

hosts: files dns
networks: files

protocols: files
services: files
ethers: files
rpc: files

# End /etc/nsswitch.conf
EOF

```

To determine the local time zone, run the following script:

```
tzselect
```

After answering a few questions about the location, the script will output the name of the time zone (e.g., *EST5EDT* or *Canada/Eastern*). Then create the `/etc/localtime` file by running:

```
cp --remove-destination /usr/share/zoneinfo/[xxx] \  
    /etc/localtime
```

Replace `[xxx]` with the name of the time zone that **tzselect** provided (e.g., *Canada/Eastern*).

The meaning of the `cp` option:

```
--remove-destination
```

This is needed to force removal of the already existing symbolic link. The reason for copying the file instead of using a symlink is to cover the situation where `/usr` is on a separate partition. This could be important when booted into single user mode.

### 6.11.3. Configuring Dynamic Loader

By default, the dynamic loader (`/lib/ld-linux.so.2`) searches through `/lib` and `/usr/lib` for dynamic libraries that are needed by programs as they are run. However, if there are libraries in directories other than `/lib` and `/usr/lib`, these need to be added to the `/etc/ld.so.conf` file in order for the dynamic loader to find them. Two directories that are commonly known to contain additional libraries are `/usr/local/lib` and `/opt/lib`, so add those directories to the dynamic loader's search path.

Create a new file `/etc/ld.so.conf` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"  
# Begin /etc/ld.so.conf  
  
/usr/local/lib  
/opt/lib  
  
# End /etc/ld.so.conf  
EOF
```

### 6.11.4. Contents of Glibc

**Installed programs:** `catchsegv`, `gencat`, `getconf`, `getent`, `iconv`, `iconvconfig`, `ldconfig`, `ldd`, `lddlibc4`, `locale`, `localedef`, `mtrace`, `nscd`, `nscd_nischeck`, `pcprofiledump`, `pt_chown`, `rpcgen`, `rpcinfo`, `sln`, `sprof`, `tzselect`, `xtrace`, `zdump`, and `zic`

**Installed libraries:** `ld.so`, `libBrokenLocale.[a,so]`, `libSegFault.so`, `libanl.[a,so]`, `libbsd-compat.a`, `libc.[a,so]`, `libcrypt.[a,so]`, `libdl.[a,so]`, `libg.a`, `libieee.a`, `libm.[a,so]`, `libmcheck.a`, `libmemusage.so`, `libnsl.a`, `libnss_compat.so`, `libnss_dns.so`, `libnss_files.so`, `libnss_hesiod.so`, `libnss_nis.so`, `libnss_nisplus.so`, `libpcprofile.so`, `libpthread.[a,so]`, `libresolv.[a,so]`, `librpcsvc.a`, `librt.[a,so]`, `libthread_db.so`, and `libutil.[a,so]`

## Short Descriptions

<b>catchsegv</b>	Can be used to create a stack trace when a program terminates with a segmentation fault
<b>gencat</b>	Generates message catalogues
<b>getconf</b>	Displays the system configuration values for file system specific variables
<b>getent</b>	Gets entries from an administrative database
<b>iconv</b>	Performs character set conversion
<b>iconvconfig</b>	Creates fastloading <b>iconv</b> module configuration files
<b>ldconfig</b>	Configures the dynamic linker runtime bindings
<b>ldd</b>	Reports which shared libraries are required by each given program or shared library
<b>lddlibc4</b>	Assists <b>ldd</b> with object files
<b>locale</b>	Tells the compiler to enable or disable the use of POSIX locales for built-in operations
<b>localedef</b>	Compiles locale specifications
<b>mtrace</b>	Reads and interprets a memory trace file and displays a summary in human-readable format
<b>nscd</b>	A daemon that provides a cache for the most common name service requests
<b>nscd_nischeck</b>	Checks whether or not secure mode is necessary for NIS+ lookup
<b>pcprofiledump</b>	Dumps information generated by PC profiling
<b>pt_chown</b>	A helper program for <b>grantpt</b> to set the owner, group and access permissions of a slave pseudo terminal
<b>rpcgen</b>	Generates C code to implement the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) protocol
<b>rpcinfo</b>	Makes an RPC call to an RPC server
<b>sln</b>	A statically linked <b>ln</b> program
<b>sprof</b>	Reads and displays shared object profiling data
<b>tzselect</b>	Asks the user about the location of the system and reports the corresponding time zone description
<b>xtrace</b>	Traces the execution of a program by printing the currently executed function
<b>zdump</b>	The time zone dumper
<b>zic</b>	The time zone compiler
<code>ld.so</code>	The helper program for shared library executables
<code>libBrokenLocale</code>	Used by programs, such as Mozilla, to solve broken locales
<code>libSegFault</code>	The segmentation fault signal handler

<code>libanl</code>	An asynchronous name lookup library
<code>libbsd-compat</code>	Provides the portability needed in order to run certain Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD) programs under Linux
<code>libc</code>	The main C library
<code>libcrypt</code>	The cryptography library
<code>libdl</code>	The dynamic linking interface library
<code>libg</code>	A runtime library for <code>g++</code>
<code>libieee</code>	The Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) floating point library
<code>libm</code>	The mathematical library
<code>libmcheck</code>	Contains code run at boot
<code>libmemusage</code>	Used by <b>memusage</b> to help collect information about the memory usage of a program
<code>libnsl</code>	The network services library
<code>libnss</code>	The Name Service Switch libraries, containing functions for resolving host names, user names, group names, aliases, services, protocols, etc.
<code>libpcprofile</code>	Contains profiling functions used to track the amount of CPU time spent in specific source code lines
<code>libpthread</code>	The POSIX threads library
<code>libresolv</code>	Contains functions for creating, sending, and interpreting packets to the Internet domain name servers
<code>librpcsvc</code>	Contains functions providing miscellaneous RPC services
<code>librt</code>	Contains functions providing most of the interfaces specified by the POSIX.1b Realtime Extension
<code>libthread_db</code>	Contains functions useful for building debuggers for multi-threaded programs
<code>libutil</code>	Contains code for “standard” functions used in many different Unix utilities



## 6.12. Re-adjusting the Toolchain

Now that the final C libraries have been installed, it is time to adjust the toolchain again. The toolchain will be adjusted so that it will link any newly compiled program against these new libraries. This is the same process used in the “Adjusting” phase in the beginning of Chapter 5, but with the adjustments reversed. In Chapter 5, the chain was guided from the host's `{,usr}/lib` directories to the new `/tools/lib` directory. Now, the chain will be guided from that same `/tools/lib` directory to the LFS `{,usr}/lib` directories.

Start by adjusting the linker. The source and build directories from the second pass of Binutils were retained for this purpose. Install the adjusted linker by running the following command from within the `binutils-build` directory:

```
make -C ld INSTALL=/tools/bin/install install
```



### Note

If the earlier warning to retain the Binutils source and build directories from the second pass in Chapter 5 was missed, or if they were accidentally deleted or are inaccessible, ignore the above command. The result will be that the next package, Binutils, will link against the C libraries in `/tools` rather than in `{,usr}/lib`. This is not ideal, however, testing has shown that the resulting Binutils program binaries should be identical.

From now on, every compiled program will link only against the libraries in `/usr/lib` and `/lib`. The extra `INSTALL=/tools/bin/install` option is needed because the Makefile file created during the second pass still contains the reference to `/usr/bin/install`, which has not been installed yet. Some host distributions contain a `ginstall` symbolic link which takes precedence in the Makefile file and can cause a problem. The above command takes care of this issue.

Remove the Binutils source and build directories now.

Next, amend the GCC specs file so that it points to the new dynamic linker. A `perl` command accomplishes this:

```
perl -pi -e 's@ /tools/lib/ld-linux.so.2@ /lib/ld-linux.so.2@g;' \
-e 's@*\startfile_prefix_spec:\n@$_/usr/lib/ @g;' \
`gcc --print-file specs`
```

It is a good idea to visually inspect the specs file to verify the intended change was actually made.



### Important

If working on a platform where the name of the dynamic linker is something other than `ld-linux.so.2`, substitute “`ld-linux.so.2`” with the name of the platform's dynamic linker in the above commands. Refer back to Section 5.2, “Toolchain Technical Notes,” if necessary.



## Caution

It is imperative at this point to stop and ensure that the basic functions (compiling and linking) of the adjusted toolchain are working as expected. To do this, perform a sanity check:

```
echo 'main(){}' > dummy.c
cc dummy.c
readelf -l a.out | grep ': /lib'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be (allowing for platform-specific differences in dynamic linker name):

```
[Requesting program interpreter: /lib/ld-linux.so.2]
```

Note that `/lib` is now the prefix of our dynamic linker.

If the output does not appear as shown above or is not received at all, then something is seriously wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. The most likely reason is that something went wrong with the specs file amendment above. Any issues will need to be resolved before continuing on with the process.

Once everything is working correctly, clean up the test files:

```
rm dummy.c a.out
```

## 6.13. Binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

**Approximate build time:** 1.3 SBU

**Required disk space:** 158 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 6.13.1. Installation of Binutils

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the `-march` and `-mcpu` options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as `CFLAGS` and `CXXFLAGS`, unset them when building Binutils.

Verify that the PTYs are working properly inside the chroot environment. Check that everything is set up correctly by performing a simple test:

```
expect -c "spawn ls"
```

If the following message shows up, the chroot environment is not set up for proper PTY operation:

```
The system has no more ptys.
Ask your system administrator to create more.
```

This issue needs to be resolved before running the test suites for Binutils and GCC.

The Binutils documentation recommends building Binutils outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir ../binutils-build
cd ../binutils-build
```

Prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
../binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2/configure --prefix=/usr \
  --enable-shared
```

Compile the package:

```
make tooldir=/usr
```

Normally, the `tooldir` (the directory where the executables will ultimately be located) is set to `$(exec_prefix)/$(target_alias)`. For example, i686 machines would expand that to `/usr/i686-pc-linux-gnu`. Because this is a custom system, this target-specific directory in `/usr` is not required. `$(exec_prefix)/$(target_alias)` would be used if the system was used to cross-compile (for example, compiling a package on an Intel machine that generates code that can be executed on PowerPC machines).

**Important**

The test suite for Binutils in this section is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstances.

Test the results:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make tooldir=/usr install
```

Install the `libiberty` header file that is needed by some packages:

```
cp ../binutils-2.15.94.0.2.2/include/libiberty.h /usr/include
```

## 6.13.2. Contents of Binutils

**Installed programs:** `addr2line`, `ar`, `as`, `c++filt`, `gprof`, `ld`, `nm`, `objcopy`, `objdump`, `ranlib`, `readelf`, `size`, `strings`, and `strip`

**Installed libraries:** `libiberty.a`, `libbfd.[a,so]`, and `libopcodes.[a,so]`

### Short Descriptions

<b>addr2line</b>	Translates program addresses to file names and line numbers; given an address and the name of an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to determine which source file and line number are associated with the address
<b>ar</b>	Creates, modifies, and extracts from archives
<b>as</b>	An assembler that assembles the output of <code>gcc</code> into object files
<b>c++filt</b>	Used by the linker to de-mangle C++ and Java symbols and to keep overloaded functions from clashing
<b>gprof</b>	Displays call graph profile data
<b>ld</b>	A linker that combines a number of object and archive files into a single file, relocating their data and tying up symbol references
<b>nm</b>	Lists the symbols occurring in a given object file
<b>objcopy</b>	Translates one type of object file into another
<b>objdump</b>	Displays information about the given object file, with options controlling the particular information to display; the information shown is useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools
<b>ranlib</b>	Generates an index of the contents of an archive and stores it in the archive; the index lists all of the symbols defined by archive members that are relocatable object files
<b>readelf</b>	Displays information about ELF type binaries

<b>size</b>	Lists the section sizes and the total size for the given object files
<b>strings</b>	Outputs, for each given file, the sequences of printable characters that are of at least the specified length (defaulting to four); for object files, it prints, by default, only the strings from the initializing and loading sections while for other types of files, it scans the entire file
<b>strip</b>	Discards symbols from object files
<code>libiberty</code>	Contains routines used by various GNU programs, including <b>getopt</b> , <b>obstack</b> , <b>strerror</b> , <b>strtol</b> , and <b>strtoul</b>
<code>libbfd</code>	The Binary File Descriptor library
<code>libopcodes</code>	A library for dealing with opcodes—the “readable text” versions of instructions for the processor; it is used for building utilities like <b>objdump</b> .

## 6.14. GCC-3.4.3

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

**Approximate build time:** 11.7 SBU

**Required disk space:** 451 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo

### 6.14.1. Installation of GCC

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the `-march` and `-mcpu` options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as `CFLAGS` and `CXXFLAGS`, unset them when building GCC.

Apply only the No-Fixincludes patch (not the Specs patch) also used in the previous chapter:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-3.4.3-no_fixincludes-1.patch
```

GCC fails to compile some packages outside of a base Linux From Scratch install (e.g., Mozilla and kdegraphics) when used in conjunction with newer versions of Binutils. Apply the following patch to fix this issue:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gcc-3.4.3-linkonce-1.patch
```

Apply a `sed` substitution that will suppress the installation of `libiberty.a`. The version of `libiberty.a` provided by Binutils will be used instead:

```
sed -i 's/install_to_$(INSTALL_DEST) //' libiberty/Makefile.in
```

The GCC documentation recommends building GCC outside of the source directory in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir ../gcc-build
cd ../gcc-build
```

Prepare GCC for compilation:

```
../gcc-3.4.3/configure --prefix=/usr \
  --libexecdir=/usr/lib --enable-shared \
  --enable-threads=posix --enable-__cxa_atexit \
  --enable-clocale=gnu --enable-languages=c,c++
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```



#### Important

In this section, the test suite for GCC is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstance.

Test the results, but do not stop at errors:

```
make -k check
```

Some of the errors are known issues and were noted in the previous chapter. The test suite notes from Section 5.11, “GCC-3.4.3 - Pass 2,” are still relevant here. Be sure to refer back to them as necessary.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Some packages expect the C preprocessor to be installed in the `/lib` directory. To support those packages, create this symlink:

```
ln -s ../usr/bin/cpp /lib
```

Many packages use the name `cc` to call the C compiler. To satisfy those packages, create a symlink:

```
ln -s gcc /usr/bin/cc
```



### Note

At this point, it is strongly recommended to repeat the sanity check performed earlier in this chapter. Refer back to Section 6.12, “Re-adjusting the Toolchain,” and repeat the check. If the results are in error, then the most likely reason is that the GCC Specs patch from Chapter 5 was erroneously applied here.

## 6.14.2. Contents of GCC

**Installed programs:** `c++`, `cc` (link to `gcc`), `cpp`, `g++`, `gcc`, `gccbug`, and `gcov`

**Installed libraries:** `libgcc.a`, `libgcc_eh.a`, `libgcc_s.so`, `libstdc++.a`, `libstdc++.so`, and `libsupc++.a`

### Short Descriptions

<b>cc</b>	The C compiler
<b>cpp</b>	The C preprocessor; it is used by the compiler to expand the <code>#include</code> , <code>#define</code> , and similar statements in the source files
<b>c++</b>	The C++ compiler
<b>g++</b>	The C++ compiler
<b>gcc</b>	The C compiler
<b>gccbug</b>	A shell script used to help create useful bug reports
<b>gcov</b>	A coverage testing tool; it is used to analyze programs to determine where optimizations will have the most effect
<b>libgcc</b>	Contains run-time support for <b>gcc</b>
<b>libstdc++</b>	The standard C++ library

`libsupc++` Provides supporting routines for the C++ programming language



## 6.15. Coreutils-5.2.1

The Coreutils package contains utilities for showing and setting the basic system characteristics.

**Approximate build time:** 0.9 SBU

**Required disk space:** 52.8 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, and Sed

### 6.15.1. Installation of Coreutils

A known issue with the **uname** program from this package is that the `-p` switch always returns unknown. The following patch fixes this behavior for Intel architectures:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../coreutils-5.2.1-uname-2.patch
```

Prevent Coreutils from installing binaries that will be installed by other packages later:

```
patch -Np1 -i \
  ../coreutils-5.2.1-suppress_uptime_kill_su-1.patch
```

Now prepare Coreutils for compilation:

```
DEFAULT_POSIX2_VERSION=199209 ./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

The test suite of Coreutils makes several assumptions about the presence of system users and groups that are not valid within the minimal environment that exists at the moment. Therefore, additional items need to be set up before running the tests. Skip down to “Install the package” if not running the test suite.

Create two dummy groups and a dummy user:

```
echo "dummy1:x:1000:" >> /etc/group
echo "dummy2:x:1001:dummy" >> /etc/group
echo "dummy:x:1000:1000:::/bin/bash" >> /etc/passwd
```

Now the test suite is ready to be run. First, run the tests that are meant to be run as user *root*:

```
make NON_ROOT_USERNAME=dummy check-root
```

Then run the remainder of the tests as the *dummy* user:

```
src/su dummy -c "make RUN_EXPENSIVE_TESTS=yes check"
```

When testing is complete, remove the dummy user and groups:

```
sed -i '/dummy/d' /etc/passwd /etc/group
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move programs to the proper locations:

```
mv /usr/bin/{[,basename,cat,chgrp,chmod,chown,cp,dd,df]} /bin
mv /usr/bin/{date,echo,false,head,hostname,install,ln} /bin
mv /usr/bin/{ls,mkdir,mknod,mv,pwd,rm,rmdir,sync} /bin
mv /usr/bin/{sleep,stty,test,touch,true,uname} /bin
mv /usr/bin/chroot /usr/sbin
```

Finally, create a symlink to be FHS-compliant:

```
ln -s ../../bin/install /usr/bin
```

## 6.15.2. Contents of Coreutils

**Installed programs:** basename, cat, chgrp, chmod, chown, chroot, cksum, comm, cp, csplit, cut, date, dd, df, dir, dircolors, dirname, du, echo, env, expand, expr, factor, false, fmt, fold, groups, head, hostid, hostname, id, install, join, link, ln, logname, ls, md5sum, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, nice, nl, nohup, od, paste, pathchk, pinky, pr, printenv, printf, ptx, pwd, readlink, rm, rmdir, seq, sha1sum, shred, sleep, sort, split, stat, stty, sum, sync, tac, tail, tee, test, touch, tr, true, tsort, tty, uname, unexpand, uniq, unlink, users, vdir, wc, who, whoami, and yes

### Short Descriptions

<b>basename</b>	Strips any path and a given suffix from a file name
<b>cat</b>	Concatenates files to standard output
<b>chgrp</b>	Changes the group ownership of files and directories
<b>chmod</b>	Changes the permissions of each file to the given mode; the mode can be either a symbolic representation of the changes to make or an octal number representing the new permissions
<b>chown</b>	Changes the user and/or group ownership of files and directories
<b>chroot</b>	Runs a command with the specified directory as the / directory
<b>cksum</b>	Prints the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) checksum and the byte counts of each specified file
<b>comm</b>	Compares two sorted files, outputting in three columns the lines that are unique and the lines that are common
<b>cp</b>	Copies files
<b>csplit</b>	Splits a given file into several new files, separating them according to given patterns or line numbers and outputting the byte count of each new file
<b>cut</b>	Prints sections of lines, selecting the parts according to given fields or positions
<b>date</b>	Displays the current time in the given format, or sets the system date
<b>dd</b>	Copies a file using the given block size and count, while optionally performing conversions on it

<b>df</b>	Reports the amount of disk space available (and used) on all mounted file systems, or only on the file systems holding the selected files
<b>dir</b>	Lists the contents of each given directory (the same as the <b>ls</b> command)
<b>dircolors</b>	Outputs commands to set the <code>LS_COLOR</code> environment variable to change the color scheme used by <b>ls</b>
<b>dirname</b>	Strips the non-directory suffix from a file name
<b>du</b>	Reports the amount of disk space used by the current directory, by each of the given directories (including all subdirectories) or by each of the given files
<b>echo</b>	Displays the given strings
<b>env</b>	Runs a command in a modified environment
<b>expand</b>	Converts tabs to spaces
<b>expr</b>	Evaluates expressions
<b>factor</b>	Prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers
<b>false</b>	Does nothing, unsuccessfully; it always exits with a status code indicating failure
<b>fmt</b>	Reformats the paragraphs in the given files
<b>fold</b>	Wraps the lines in the given files
<b>groups</b>	Reports a user's group memberships
<b>head</b>	Prints the first ten lines (or the given number of lines) of each given file
<b>hostid</b>	Reports the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) of the host
<b>hostname</b>	Reports or sets the name of the host
<b>id</b>	Reports the effective user ID, group ID, and group memberships of the current user or specified user
<b>install</b>	Copies files while setting their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group
<b>join</b>	Joins the lines that have identical join fields from two separate files
<b>link</b>	Creates a hard link with the given name to a file
<b>ln</b>	Makes hard links or soft (symbolic) links between files
<b>logname</b>	Reports the current user's login name
<b>ls</b>	Lists the contents of each given directory
<b>md5sum</b>	Reports or checks Message Digest 5 (MD5) checksums
<b>mkdir</b>	Creates directories with the given names
<b>mkfifo</b>	Creates First-In, First-Outs (FIFOs), a “named pipe” in UNIX parlance, with the given names
<b>mknod</b>	Creates device nodes with the given names; a device node is a character special file, a block special file, or a FIFO

<b>mv</b>	Moves or renames files or directories
<b>nice</b>	Runs a program with modified scheduling priority
<b>nl</b>	Numbers the lines from the given files
<b>nohup</b>	Runs a command immune to hangups, with its output redirected to a log file
<b>od</b>	Dumps files in octal and other formats
<b>paste</b>	Merges the given files, joining sequentially corresponding lines side by side, separated by tab characters
<b>pathchk</b>	Checks if file names are valid or portable
<b>pinky</b>	Is a lightweight finger client; it reports some information about the given users
<b>pr</b>	Paginates and columnates files for printing
<b>printenv</b>	Prints the environment
<b>printf</b>	Prints the given arguments according to the given format, much like the C printf function
<b>ptx</b>	Produces a permuted index from the contents of the given files, with each keyword in its context
<b>pwd</b>	Reports the name of the current working directory
<b>readlink</b>	Reports the value of the given symbolic link
<b>rm</b>	Removes files or directories
<b>rmdir</b>	Removes directories if they are empty
<b>seq</b>	Prints a sequence of numbers within a given range and with a given increment
<b>sha1sum</b>	Prints or checks 160-bit Secure Hash Algorithm 1 (SHA1) checksums
<b>shred</b>	Overwrites the given files repeatedly with complex patterns, making it difficult to recover the data
<b>sleep</b>	Pauses for the given amount of time
<b>sort</b>	Sorts the lines from the given files
<b>split</b>	Splits the given file into pieces, by size or by number of lines
<b>stat</b>	Displays file or filesystem status
<b>stty</b>	Sets or reports terminal line settings
<b>sum</b>	Prints checksum and block counts for each given file
<b>sync</b>	Flushes file system buffers; it forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block
<b>tac</b>	Concatenates the given files in reverse
<b>tail</b>	Prints the last ten lines (or the given number of lines) of each given file
<b>tee</b>	Reads from standard input while writing both to standard output and to the given files
<b>test</b>	Compares values and checks file types

<b>touch</b>	Changes file timestamps, setting the access and modification times of the given files to the current time; files that do not exist are created with zero length
<b>tr</b>	Translates, squeezes, and deletes the given characters from standard input
<b>true</b>	Does nothing, successfully; it always exits with a status code indicating success
<b>tsort</b>	Performs a topological sort; it writes a completely ordered list according to the partial ordering in a given file
<b>tty</b>	Reports the file name of the terminal connected to standard input
<b>uname</b>	Reports system information
<b>unexpand</b>	Converts spaces to tabs
<b>uniq</b>	Discards all but one of successive identical lines
<b>unlink</b>	Removes the given file
<b>users</b>	Reports the names of the users currently logged on
<b>vdir</b>	Is the same as <b>ls -l</b>
<b>wc</b>	Reports the number of lines, words, and bytes for each given file, as well as a total line when more than one file is given
<b>who</b>	Reports who is logged on
<b>whoami</b>	Reports the user name associated with the current effective user ID
<b>yes</b>	Repeatedly outputs “y” or a given string until killed

## 6.16. Zlib-1.2.2

The Zlib package contains compression and decompression routines used by some programs.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Sed

### 6.16.1. Installation of Zlib

Zlib has a buffer overflow vulnerability that can lead to a Denial of Service attack. The following patch fixes the problem:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../zlib-1.2.2-security_fix-1.patch
```



#### Note

Zlib is known to build its shared library incorrectly if `CFLAGS` is specified in the environment. If using a specified `CFLAGS` variable, be sure to add the `-fPIC` directive to the `CFLAGS` variable for the duration of the `configure` command below, then remove it afterwards.

Prepare Zlib for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --shared --libdir=/lib
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the shared library:

```
make install
```

The previous command installed a `.so` file in `/lib`. We will remove it and relink it into `/usr/lib`:

```
rm /lib/libz.so
ln -sf ../../lib/libz.so.1.2.2 /usr/lib/libz.so
```

Build the static library:

```
make clean
./configure --prefix=/usr
make
```

To test the results again, issue: **make check**.

Install the static library:

```
make install
```

Fix the permissions on the static library:

```
chmod 644 /usr/lib/libz.a
```

## 6.16.2. Contents of Zlib

**Installed libraries:** libz.[a,so]

### Short Descriptions

`libz` Contains compression and un-compression functions used by some programs

## 6.17. Mktmp-1.5

The Mktmp package contains programs used to create secure temporary files in shell scripts.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 436 KB

**Installation depends on:** Coreutils, Make, and Patch

### 6.17.1. Installation of Mktmp

Many scripts still use the deprecated **tempfile** program, which has functionality similar to **mktemp**. Patch Mktmp to include a **tempfile** wrapper:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../mktemp-1.5-add_tempfile-2.patch
```

Prepare Mktmp for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-libc
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--with-libc*

This causes the **mktemp** program to use the *mkstemp* and *mkdtemp* functions from the system C library.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
make install-tempfile
```

### 6.17.2. Contents of Mktmp

**Installed programs:** mktemp and tempfile

#### Short Descriptions

**mktemp**      Creates temporary files in a secure manner; it is used in scripts

**tempfile**    Creates temporary files in a less secure manner than **mktemp**; it is installed for backwards-compatibility



## 6.18. Iana-Etc-1.04

The Iana-Etc package provides data for network services and protocols.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Make

### 6.18.1. Installation of Iana-Etc

The following command converts the raw data provided by IANA into the correct formats for the `/etc/protocols` and `/etc/services` data files:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.18.2. Contents of Iana-Etc

**Installed files:** `/etc/protocols` and `/etc/services`

#### Short Descriptions

<code>/etc/protocols</code>	Describes the various DARPA Internet protocols that are available from the TCP/IP subsystem
<code>/etc/services</code>	Provides a mapping between friendly textual names for internet services, and their underlying assigned port numbers and protocol types

## 6.19. Findutils-4.2.23

The Findutils package contains programs to find files. These programs are provided to recursively search through a directory tree and to create, maintain, and search a database (often faster than the recursive find, but unreliable if the database has not been recently updated).

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 9.4 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make and Sed

### 6.19.1. Installation of Findutils

Prepare Findutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib/locate \
--localstatedir=/var/lib/locate
```

The `localstatedir` option above changes the location of the `locate` database to be in `/var/lib/locate`, which is FHS-compliant.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: `make check`.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.19.2. Contents of Findutils

**Installed programs:** bigram, code, find, frcode, locate, updatedb, and xargs

#### Short Descriptions

<b>bigram</b>	Was formerly used to produce <b>locate</b> databases
<b>code</b>	Was formerly used to produce <b>locate</b> databases; it is the ancestor of <b>frcode</b> .
<b>find</b>	Searches given directory trees for files matching the specified criteria
<b>frcode</b>	Is called by <b>updatedb</b> to compress the list of file names; it uses front-compression, reducing the database size by a factor of four to five.
<b>locate</b>	Searches through a database of file names and reports the names that contain a given string or match a given pattern
<b>updatedb</b>	Updates the <b>locate</b> database; it scans the entire file system (including other file systems that are currently mounted, unless told not to) and puts every file name it finds into the database
<b>xargs</b>	Can be used to apply a given command to a list of files

## 6.20. Gawk-3.1.4

The Gawk package contains programs for manipulating text files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 16.4 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.20.1. Installation of Gawk

Prepare Gawk for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/lib
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.20.2. Contents of Gawk

**Installed programs:** awk (link to gawk), gawk, gawk-3.1.4, grcat, igawk, pgawk, pgawk-3.1.4, and pwcats

#### Short Descriptions

<b>awk</b>	A link to <b>gawk</b>
<b>gawk</b>	A program for manipulating text files; it is the GNU implementation of <b>awk</b>
<b>gawk-3.1.4</b>	A hard link to <b>gawk</b>
<b>grcat</b>	Dumps the group database <code>/etc/group</code>
<b>igawk</b>	Gives <b>gawk</b> the ability to include files
<b>pgawk</b>	The profiling version of <b>gawk</b>
<b>pgawk-3.1.4</b>	Hard link to <b>pgawk</b>
<b>pwcats</b>	Dumps the password database <code>/etc/passwd</code>

## 6.21. Ncurses-5.4

The Ncurses package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 18.6 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.21.1. Installation of Ncurses

Prepare Ncurses for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --with-shared --without-debug
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Give the Ncurses libraries execute permissions:

```
chmod 755 /usr/lib/*.5.4
```

Fix a library that should not be executable:

```
chmod 644 /usr/lib/libncurses++.a
```

Move the libraries to the `/lib` directory, where they are expected to reside:

```
mv /usr/lib/libncurses.so.5* /lib
```

Because the libraries have been moved, a few symlinks point to non-existent files. Recreate those symlinks:

```
ln -sf ../../lib/libncurses.so.5 /usr/lib/libncurses.so
ln -sf libncurses.so /usr/lib/libcurses.so
```

## 6.21.2. Contents of Ncurses

**Installed programs:** captinfo (link to tic), clear, infocmp, infotocap (link to tic), reset (link to tset), tack, tic, toe, tput, and tset

**Installed libraries:** libcurses.[a,so] (link to libncurses.[a,so]), libform.[a,so], libmenu.[a,so], libncurses++.a, libncurses.[a,so], and libpanel.[a,so]

### Short Descriptions

<b>captinfo</b>	Converts a termcap description into a terminfo description
<b>clear</b>	Clears the screen, if possible
<b>infocmp</b>	Compares or prints out terminfo descriptions
<b>infotocap</b>	Converts a terminfo description into a termcap description
<b>reset</b>	Reinitializes a terminal to its default values
<b>tack</b>	The terminfo action checker; it is mainly used to test the accuracy of an entry in the terminfo database
<b>tic</b>	The terminfo entry-description compiler that translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format needed for the ncurses library routines. A terminfo file contains information on the capabilities of a certain terminal
<b>toe</b>	Lists all available terminal types, giving the primary name and description for each
<b>tput</b>	Makes the values of terminal-dependent capabilities available to the shell; it can also be used to reset or initialize a terminal or report its long name
<b>tset</b>	Can be used to initialize terminals
<b>libcurses</b>	A link to <b>libncurses</b>
<b>libncurses</b>	Contains functions to display text in many complex ways on a terminal screen; a good example of the use of these functions is the menu displayed during the kernel's <b>make menuconfig</b>
<b>libform</b>	Contains functions to implement forms
<b>libmenu</b>	Contains functions to implement menus
<b>libpanel</b>	Contains functions to implement panels

## 6.22. Readline-5.0

The Readline package is a set of libraries that offers command-line editing and history capabilities.

**Approximate build time:** 0.11 SBU

**Required disk space:** 9.1 MB

**Installation depends on:** Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

### 6.22.1. Installation of Readline

The following patch includes a fix for a problem where Readline sometimes only shows 33 characters on a line and then wraps to the next line. It also includes other fixes recommended by the Readline author.

```
patch -Np1 -i ../readline-5.0-fixes-1.patch
```

Prepare Readline for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libdir=/lib
```

Compile the package:

```
make SHLIB_XLDFLAGS=-lncurses
```

The meaning of the make option:

```
SHLIB_XLDFLAGS=-lncurses
```

This option forces Readline to link against the `libncurses` library.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Give Readline's dynamic libraries more appropriate permissions:

```
chmod 755 /lib/lib{readline,history}.so*
```

Now move the static libraries to a more appropriate location:

```
mv /lib/lib{readline,history}.a /usr/lib
```

Next, remove the `.so` files in `/lib` and relink them into `/usr/lib`.

```
rm /lib/lib{readline,history}.so
ln -sf ../../lib/libreadline.so.5 /usr/lib/libreadline.so
ln -sf ../../lib/libhistory.so.5 /usr/lib/libhistory.so
```

## 6.22.2. Contents of Readline

**Installed libraries:** libhistory.[a,so], and libreadline.[a,so]

### Short Descriptions

`libhistory` Provides a consistent user interface for recalling lines of history

`libreadline` Aids in the consistency of user interface across discrete programs that need to provide a command line interface

## 6.23. Vim-6.3

The Vim package contains a powerful text editor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 38.0 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed



### Alternatives to Vim

If you prefer another editor—such as Emacs, Joe, or Nano—please refer to <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/postlfs/editors.html> for suggested installation instructions.

### 6.23.1. Installation of Vim

First, unpack both `vim-6.3.tar.bz2` and (optionally) `vim-6.3-lang.tar.gz` archives into the same directory. Then, change the default locations of the `vimrc` and `gvimrc` configuration files to `/etc`:

```
echo '#define SYS_VIMRC_FILE "/etc/vimrc"' >> src/feature.h
echo '#define SYS_GVIMRC_FILE "/etc/gvimrc"' >> src/feature.h
```

Vim has a security vulnerability already addressed upstream. The following patch fixes the problem:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../vim-6.3-security_fix-1.patch
```

Now prepare Vim for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --enable-multibyte
```

The optional but highly recommended `--enable-multibyte` switch includes support for editing files in multibyte character encodings into **vim**. This is needed if using a locale with a multibyte character set. This switch is also helpful to be able to edit text files initially created in Linux distributions like Fedora Core that use UTF-8 as a default character set.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: `make test`. However, this test suite outputs a lot of binary data to the screen, which can cause issues with the settings of the current terminal. This can be resolved by redirecting the output to a log file.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Many users are used to using **vi** instead of **vim**. To allow execution of **vim** when users habitually enter **vi**, create a symlink:

```
ln -s vim /usr/bin/vi
```



If an X Window System is going to be installed on the LFS system, it may be necessary to recompile Vim after installing X. Vim comes with a GUI version of the editor that requires X and some additional libraries to be installed. For more information on this process, refer to the Vim documentation and the Vim installation page in the BLFS book at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/postlfs/editors.html#postlfs-editors-vim>.

## 6.23.2. Configuring Vim

By default, **vim** runs in vi-incompatible mode. This may be new to users who have used other editors in the past. The “*nocompatible*” setting is included below to highlight the fact that a new behavior is being used. It also reminds those who would change to “*compatible*” mode that it should be the first setting in the configuration file. This is necessary because it changes other settings, and overrides must come after this setting. Create a default **vim** configuration file by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/vimrc << "EOF"
" Begin /etc/vimrc

set nocompatible
set backspace=2
syntax on
if (&term == "item") || (&term == "putty")
    set background=dark
endif

" End /etc/vimrc
EOF
```

The *set nocompatible* makes **vim** behave in a more useful way (the default) than the vi-compatible manner. Remove the “no” to keep the old **vi** behavior. The *set backspace=2* allows backspacing over line breaks, autoindents, and the start of insert. The *syntax on* enables vim's syntax highlighting. Finally, the *if* statement with the *set background=dark* corrects **vim**'s guess about the background color of some terminal emulators. This gives the highlighting a better color scheme for use on the black background of these programs.

Documentation for other available options can be obtained by running the following command:

```
vim -c ':options'
```

## 6.23.3. Contents of Vim

**Installed programs:** `efm_filter.pl`, `efm_perl.pl`, `ex` (link to vim), `less.sh`, `mve.awk`, `pltags.pl`, `ref`, `rview` (link to vim), `rvim` (link to vim), `shtags.pl`, `tcltags`, `vi` (link to vim), `view` (link to vim), `vim`, `vim132`, `vim2html.pl`, `vimdiff` (link to vim), `vimm`, `vimspell.sh`, `vimtutor`, and `xxd`

### Short Descriptions

<b>efm_filter.pl</b>	A filter for creating an error file that can be read by <b>vim</b>
<b>efm_perl.pl</b>	Reformats the error messages of the Perl interpreter for use with the “quickfix” mode of <b>vim</b>
<b>ex</b>	Starts <b>vim</b> in ex mode

<b>less.sh</b>	A script that starts <b>vim</b> with less.vim
<b>mve.awk</b>	Processes <b>vim</b> errors
<b>pltags.pl</b>	Creates a tags file for Perl code for use by <b>vim</b>
<b>ref</b>	Checks the spelling of arguments
<b>rview</b>	Is a restricted version of <b>view</b> ; no shell commands can be started and <b>view</b> cannot be suspended
<b>rvim</b>	Is a restricted version of <b>vim</b> ; no shell commands can be started and <b>vim</b> cannot be suspended
<b>shtags.pl</b>	Generates a tags file for Perl scripts
<b>tcltags</b>	Generates a tags file for TCL code
<b>view</b>	Starts <b>vim</b> in read-only mode
<b>vi</b>	Is the editor
<b>vim</b>	Is the editor
<b>vim132</b>	Starts <b>vim</b> with the terminal in 132-column mode
<b>vim2html.pl</b>	Converts Vim documentation to HypterText Markup Language (HTML)
<b>vimdiff</b>	Edits two or three versions of a file with <b>vim</b> and show differences
<b>vimm</b>	Enables the DEC locator input model on a remote terminal
<b>vimspell.sh</b>	Spell checks a file and generates the syntax statements necessary to highlight in <b>vim</b> . This script requires the old Unix <b>spell</b> command, which is provided neither in LFS nor in BLFS
<b>vimtutor</b>	Teaches the basic keys and commands of <b>vim</b>
<b>xxd</b>	Creates a hex dump of the given file; it can also do the reverse, so it can be used for binary patching

## 6.24. M4-1.4.3

The M4 package contains a macro processor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.8 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, and Sed

### 6.24.1. Installation of M4

Prepare M4 for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.24.2. Contents of M4

**Installed program:** m4

#### Short Descriptions

**m4** copies the given files while expanding the macros that they contain. These macros are either built-in or user-defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides performing macro expansion, **m4** has built-in functions for including named files, running Unix commands, performing integer arithmetic, manipulating text, recursion, etc. The **m4** program can be used either as a front-end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.

## 6.25. Bison-2.0

The Bison package contains a parser generator.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 9.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, and Sed

### 6.25.1. Installation of Bison

Prepare Bison for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.25.2. Contents of Bison

**Installed programs:** bison and yacc

**Installed library:** liby.a

#### Short Descriptions

- bison** Generates, from a series of rules, a program for analyzing the structure of text files; Bison is a replacement for Yacc (Yet Another Compiler Compiler)
- yacc** A wrapper for **bison**, meant for programs that still call **yacc** instead of **bison**; it calls **bison** with the `-y` option
- liby.a** The Yacc library containing implementations of Yacc-compatible *yyerror* and *main* functions; this library is normally not very useful, but POSIX requires it

## 6.26. Less-382

The Less package contains a text file viewer.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.3 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

### 6.26.1. Installation of Less

Prepare Less for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin --sysconfdir=/etc
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--sysconfdir=/etc*

This option tells the programs created by the package to look in `/etc` for the configuration files.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.26.2. Contents of Less

**Installed programs:** less, lessecho, and lesskey

#### Short Descriptions

<b>less</b>	A file viewer or pager; it displays the contents of the given file, letting the user scroll, find strings, and jump to marks
<b>lessecho</b>	Needed to expand meta-characters, such as <code>*</code> and <code>?</code> , in filenames on Unix systems
<b>lesskey</b>	Used to specify the key bindings for <b>less</b>

## 6.27. Groff-1.19.1

The Groff package contains programs for processing and formatting text.

**Approximate build time:** 0.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 38.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.27.1. Installation of Groff

Groff expects the environment variable `PAGE` to contain the default paper size. For users in the United States, `PAGE=letter` is appropriate. Elsewhere, `PAGE=A4` may be more suitable.

Prepare Groff for compilation:

```
PAGE=[paper_size] ./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Some documentation programs, such as **xman**, will not work properly without the following symlinks:

```
ln -s soelim /usr/bin/zsoelim
ln -s eqn /usr/bin/geqn
ln -s tbl /usr/bin/gtbl
```

### 6.27.2. Contents of Groff

**Installed programs:** addftinfo, afmtodit, eqn, eqn2graph, geqn (link to eqn), grn, grodvi, groff, groffer, grog, grolbp, grolj4, grops, grotty, gtbl (link to tbl), hpftodit, indxbib, lkbib, lookbib, mmroff, neqn, nroff, pfbtops, pic, pic2graph, post-grohtml, pre-grohtml, refer, soelim, tbl, tfmtodit, troff, and zsoelim (link to soelim)

#### Short Descriptions

<b>addftinfo</b>	Reads a troff font file and adds some additional font-metric information that is used by the <b>groff</b> system
<b>afmtodit</b>	Creates a font file for use with <b>groff</b> and <b>grops</b>
<b>eqn</b>	Compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by <b>troff</b>
<b>eqn2graph</b>	Converts a troff EQN (equation) into a cropped image
<b>geqn</b>	A link to <b>eqn</b>
<b>grn</b>	A <b>groff</b> preprocessor for gremlin files

<b>grodvi</b>	A driver for <b>groff</b> that produces TeX dvi format
<b>groff</b>	A front-end to the groff document formatting system; normally, it runs the <b>troff</b> program and a post-processor appropriate for the selected device
<b>groffer</b>	Displays groff files and man pages on X and tty terminals
<b>grog</b>	Reads files and guesses which of the <b>groff</b> options <i>-e</i> , <i>-man</i> , <i>-me</i> , <i>-mm</i> , <i>-ms</i> , <i>-p</i> , <i>-s</i> , and <i>-t</i> are required for printing files, and reports the <b>groff</b> command including those options
<b>grolbp</b>	Is a <b>groff</b> driver for Canon CAPSL printers (LBP-4 and LBP-8 series laser printers)
<b>grolj4</b>	Is a driver for <b>groff</b> that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP LaserJet 4 printer
<b>grops</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> to PostScript
<b>grotty</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> into a form suitable for typewriter-like devices
<b>gtbl</b>	A link to <b>tbl</b>
<b>hpftdit</b>	Creates a font file for use with <b>groff -Tlj4</b> from an HP-tagged font metric file
<b>indxbib</b>	Creates an inverted index for the bibliographic databases with a specified file for use with <b>refer</b> , <b>lookbib</b> , and <b>lkbib</b>
<b>lkbib</b>	Searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and reports any references found
<b>lookbib</b>	Prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads a line containing a set of keywords from the standard input, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input
<b>mmroff</b>	A simple preprocessor for <b>groff</b>
<b>neqn</b>	Formats equations for American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) output
<b>nroff</b>	A script that emulates the <b>nroff</b> command using <b>groff</b>
<b>pfbtops</b>	Translates a PostScript font in <i>.pfb</i> format to ASCII
<b>pic</b>	Compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands understood by TeX or <b>troff</b>
<b>pic2graph</b>	Converts a PIC diagram into a cropped image
<b>post-grohtml</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> to HTML
<b>pre-grohtml</b>	Translates the output of GNU <b>troff</b> to HTML
<b>refer</b>	Copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between <i>./</i> and <i>./</i> are interpreted as citations, and lines between <i>.R1</i> and <i>.R2</i> are interpreted as commands for how citations are to be processed
<b>soelim</b>	Reads files and replaces lines of the form <i>.so file</i> by the contents of the mentioned <i>file</i>

<b>tbl</b>	Compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by <b>troff</b>
<b>tfmtoedit</b>	Creates a font file for use with <b>groff -Tdvi</b>
<b>troff</b>	Is highly compatible with Unix <b>troff</b> ; it should usually be invoked using the <b>groff</b> command, which will also run preprocessors and post-processors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options
<b>zsoelim</b>	A link to <b>soelim</b>



## 6.28. Sed-4.1.4

The Sed package contains a stream editor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.4 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Texinfo

### 6.28.1. Installation of Sed

Prepare Sed for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.28.2. Contents of Sed

**Installed program:** sed

#### Short Descriptions

**sed** Filters and transforms text files in a single pass

## 6.29. Flex-2.5.31

The Flex package contains a utility for generating programs that recognize patterns in text.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 22.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, and Sed

### 6.29.1. Installation of Flex

Flex contains several known bugs. Fix these with the following patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../flex-2.5.31-debian_fixes-3.patch
```

The GNU autotools detects that the Flex source code has been modified by the previous patch and tries to update the man page accordingly. This does not work correctly on many systems, and the default page is fine, so make sure it does not get regenerated:

```
touch doc/flex.1
```

Prepare Flex for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

There are some packages that expect to find the `lex` library in `/usr/lib`. Create a symlink to account for this:

```
ln -s libfl.a /usr/lib/libl.a
```

A few programs do not know about **flex** yet and try to run its predecessor, **lex**. To support those programs, create a wrapper script named `lex` that calls `flex` in **lex** emulation mode:

```
cat > /usr/bin/lex << "EOF"
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /usr/bin/lex

exec /usr/bin/flex -l "$@"

# End /usr/bin/lex
EOF
chmod 755 /usr/bin/lex
```

## 6.29.2. Contents of Flex

**Installed programs:** flex, flex++ (link to flex), and lex

**Installed library:** libfl.a

### Short Descriptions

**flex**            A tool for generating programs that recognize patterns in text; it allows for the versatility to specify the rules for pattern-finding, eradicating the need to develop a specialized program

**flex++**        Invokes a version of **flex** that is used exclusively for C++ scanners

**lex**             A script that runs **flex** in **lex** emulation mode

libfl.a         The flex library

## 6.30. Gettext-0.14.3

The Gettext package contains utilities for internationalization and localization. These allow programs to be compiled with NLS (Native Language Support), enabling them to output messages in the user's native language.

**Approximate build time:** 1.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 65.1 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.30.1. Installation of Gettext

Prepare Gettext for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. This takes a very long time, around 7 SBUs.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.30.2. Contents of Gettext

**Installed programs:** autopoint, config.charset, config.rpath, envsubst, gettext, gettextize, hostname, msgattrib, msgcat, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgconv, msgen, msgexec, msgfilter, msgfmt, msggrep, msginit, msgmerge, msgunfmt, msguniq, ngettext, and xgettext

**Installed libraries:** libasprintf.[a,so], libgettextlib.so, libgettextpo.[a,so], and libgettextsrc.so

### Short Descriptions

<b>autopoint</b>	Copies standard Gettext infrastructure files into a source package
<b>config.charset</b>	Outputs a system-dependent table of character encoding aliases
<b>config.rpath</b>	Outputs a system-dependent set of variables, describing how to set the runtime search path of shared libraries in an executable
<b>envsubst</b>	Substitutes environment variables in shell format strings
<b>gettext</b>	Translates a natural language message into the user's language by looking up the translation in a message catalog
<b>gettextize</b>	Copies all standard Gettext files into the given top-level directory of a package to begin internationalizing it
<b>hostname</b>	Displays a network hostname in various forms

<b>msgattrib</b>	Filters the messages of a translation catalog according to their attributes and manipulates the attributes
<b>msgcat</b>	Concatenates and merges the given .po files
<b>msgcmp</b>	Compares two .po files to check that both contain the same set of msgid strings
<b>msgcomm</b>	Finds the messages that are common to the given .po files
<b>msgconv</b>	Converts a translation catalog to a different character encoding
<b>mngen</b>	Creates an English translation catalog
<b>msgexec</b>	Applies a command to all translations of a translation catalog
<b>msgfilter</b>	Applies a filter to all translations of a translation catalog
<b>msgfmt</b>	Generates a binary message catalog from a translation catalog
<b>msggrep</b>	Extracts all messages of a translation catalog that match a given pattern or belong to some given source files
<b>msginit</b>	Creates a new .po file, initializing the meta information with values from the user's environment
<b>msgmerge</b>	Combines two raw translations into a single file
<b>msgunfmt</b>	Decompiles a binary message catalog into raw translation text
<b>msguniq</b>	Unifies duplicate translations in a translation catalog
<b>ngettext</b>	Displays native language translations of a textual message whose grammatical form depends on a number
<b>xgettext</b>	Extracts the translatable message lines from the given source files to make the first translation template
libasprintf	defines the <i>autosprintf</i> class, which makes C formatted output routines usable in C++ programs, for use with the <i>&lt;string&gt;</i> strings and the <i>&lt;iostream&gt;</i> streams
libgettextlib	a private library containing common routines used by the various Gettext programs; these are not intended for general use
libgettextpo	Used to write specialized programs that process .po files; this library is used when the standard applications shipped with Gettext (such as <b>msgcomm</b> , <b>msgcmp</b> , <b>msgattrib</b> , and <b>mngen</b> ) will not suffice
libgettextsrc	A private library containing common routines used by the various Gettext programs; these are not intended for general use

## 6.31. Inetutils-1.4.2

The Inetutils package contains programs for basic networking.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

### 6.31.1. Installation of Inetutils

Inetutils has issues with the Linux 2.6 kernel series. Fix these issues by applying the following patch:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../inetutils-1.4.2-kernel_headers-1.patch
```

All programs that come with Inetutils will not be installed. However, the Inetutils build system will insist on installing all the man pages anyway. The following patch will correct this situation:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../inetutils-1.4.2-no_server_man_pages-1.patch
```

Prepare Inetutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --libexecdir=/usr/sbin \
  --sysconfdir=/etc --localstatedir=/var \
  --disable-logger --disable-syslogd \
  --disable-whois --disable-servers
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--disable-logger*

This option prevents Inetutils from installing the **logger** program, which is used by scripts to pass messages to the System Log Daemon. Do not install it because Util-linux installs a better version later.

*--disable-syslogd*

This option prevents Inetutils from installing the System Log Daemon, which is installed with the Sysklogd package.

*--disable-whois*

This option disables the building of the Inetutils **whois** client, which is out of date. Instructions for a better **whois** client are in the BLFS book.

*--disable-servers*

This disables the installation of the various network servers included as part of the Inetutils package. These servers are deemed not appropriate in a basic LFS system. Some are insecure by nature and are only considered safe on trusted networks. More information can be found at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/basicnet/inetutils.html>. Note that better replacements are available for many of these servers.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move the **ping** program to its FHS-compliant place:

```
mv /usr/bin/ping /bin
```

## 6.31.2. Contents of Inetutils

**Installed programs:** ftp, ping, rcp, rlogin, rsh, talk, telnet, and tftp

### Short Descriptions

<b>ftp</b>	Is the file transfer protocol program
<b>ping</b>	Sends echo-request packets and reports how long the replies take
<b>rcp</b>	Performs remote file copy
<b>rlogin</b>	Performs remote login
<b>rsh</b>	Runs a remote shell
<b>talk</b>	Is used to chat with another user
<b>telnet</b>	An interface to the TELNET protocol
<b>tftp</b>	A trivial file transfer program

## 6.32. IPRoute2-2.6.11-050330

The IPRoute2 package contains programs for basic and advanced IPV4-based networking.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.3 MB

**Installation depends on:** GCC, Glibc, Make, Linux-Headers, and Sed

### 6.32.1. Installation of IPRoute2

The **arpd** binary included in this package is dependent on Berkeley DB. Because **arpd** is not a very common requirement on a base Linux system, remove the dependency on Berkeley DB by applying the patch using the command below. If the **arpd** binary is needed, instructions for compiling Berkeley DB can be found in the BLFS Book at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/server/databases.html#db>.

```
patch -Np1 -i ../iproute2-2.6.11_050330-remove_db-1.patch
```

Prepare IPRoute2 for compilation:

```
./configure
```

Compile the package:

```
make SBINDIR=/sbin
```

The meaning of the make option:

```
SBINDIR=/sbin
```

This ensures that the IPRoute2 binaries will install into `/sbin`. This is the correct location according to the FHS, because some of the IPRoute2 binaries are used by the LFS-Bootscripts package.

Install the package:

```
make SBINDIR=/sbin install
```

### 6.32.2. Contents of IPRoute2

**Installed programs:** `ctstat` (link to `lnstat`), `ifcfg`, `ifstat`, `ip`, `lnstat`, `nstat`, `routef`, `routel`, `rtacct`, `rtmon`, `rtpr`, `rtstat` (link to `lnstat`), `ss`, and `tc`.

#### Short Descriptions

<b>ctstat</b>	Connection status utility
<b>ifcfg</b>	A shell script wrapper for the <b>ip</b> command
<b>ifstat</b>	Shows the interface statistics, including the amount of transmitted and received packets by interface



<b>ip</b>	The main executable. It has several different functions: <b>ip link [device]</b> allows users to look at the state of devices and to make changes <b>ip addr</b> allows users to look at addresses and their properties, add new addresses, and delete old ones <b>ip neighbor</b> allows users to look at neighbor bindings and their properties, add new neighbor entries, and delete old ones <b>ip rule</b> allows users to look at the routing policies and change them <b>ip route</b> allows users to look at the routing table and change routing table rules <b>ip tunnel</b> allows users to look at the IP tunnels and their properties, and change them <b>ip maddr</b> allows users to look at the multicast addresses and their properties, and change them <b>ip mroute</b> allows users to set, change, or delete the multicast routing <b>ip monitor</b> allows users to continuously monitor the state of devices, addresses and routes
<b>lnstat</b>	Provides Linux network statistics. It is a generalized and more feature-complete replacement for the old <b>rtstat</b> program
<b>nstat</b>	Shows network statistics
<b>routef</b>	A component of <b>ip route</b> . This is for flushing the routing tables
<b>routel</b>	A component of <b>ip route</b> . This is for listing the routing tables
<b>rtacct</b>	Displays the contents of <code>/proc/net/rt_acct</code>
<b>rtmon</b>	Route monitoring utility
<b>rtpr</b>	Converts the output of <b>ip -o</b> back into a readable form
<b>rtstat</b>	Route status utility
<b>ss</b>	Similar to the <b>netstat</b> command; shows active connections
<b>tc</b>	Traffic Controlling Executable; this is for Quality Of Service (QOS) and Class Of Service (COS) implementations <b>tc qdisc</b> allows users to setup the queueing discipline <b>tc class</b> allows users to setup classes based on the queueing discipline scheduling <b>tc estimator</b> allows users to estimate the network flow into a network <b>tc filter</b> allows users to setup the QOS/COS packet filtering <b>tc policy</b> allows users to setup the QOS/COS policies

## 6.33. Perl-5.8.6

The Perl package contains the Practical Extraction and Report Language.

**Approximate build time:** 2.9 SBU

**Required disk space:** 137 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.33.1. Installation of Perl

To have full control over the way Perl is set up, run the interactive **Configure** script and hand-pick the way this package is built. If the defaults it auto-detects are suitable, prepare Perl for compilation with:

```
./configure.gnu --prefix=/usr -Dpager="/bin/less -isR"
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
-Dpager="/bin/less -isR"
```

This corrects an error in the **perldoc** code with the invocation of the **less** program.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To run the test suite, first create a basic `/etc/hosts` file which is needed by a couple of the tests to resolve the network name `localhost`:

```
echo "127.0.0.1 localhost $(hostname)" > /etc/hosts
```

Now run the tests, if desired:

```
make test
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.33.2. Contents of Perl

**Installed programs:** `a2p`, `c2ph`, `dprofpp`, `enc2xs`, `find2perl`, `h2ph`, `h2xs`, `libnetcfg`, `perl`, `perl5.8.6` (link to `perl`), `perlbug`, `perlcc`, `perldoc`, `perlivp`, `piconv`, `pl2pm`, `pod2html`, `pod2latex`, `pod2man`, `pod2text`, `pod2usage`, `podchecker`, `podselect`, `psed` (link to `s2p`), `pstruct` (link to `c2ph`), `s2p`, `splain`, and `xsubpp`

**Installed libraries:** Several hundred which cannot all be listed here

### Short Descriptions

**a2p** Translates `awk` to Perl

**c2ph** Dumps C structures as generated from `cc -g -S`

<b>dprofpp</b>	Displays Perl profile data
<b>en2cx</b>	Builds a Perl extension for the Encode module from either Unicode Character Mappings or Tcl Encoding Files
<b>find2perl</b>	Translates <b>find</b> commands to Perl
<b>h2ph</b>	Converts .h C header files to .ph Perl header files
<b>h2xs</b>	Converts .h C header files to Perl extensions
<b>libnetcfg</b>	Can be used to configure the <code>libnet</code>
<b>perl</b>	Combines some of the best features of C, <b>sed</b> , <b>awk</b> and <b>sh</b> into a single swiss-army language
<b>perl5.8.6</b>	A hard link to <b>perl</b>
<b>perlbug</b>	Used to generate bug reports about Perl, or the modules that come with it, and mail them
<b>perlcc</b>	Generates executables from Perl programs
<b>perldoc</b>	Displays a piece of documentation in pod format that is embedded in the Perl installation tree or in a Perl script
<b>perlivp</b>	The Perl Installation Verification Procedure; it can be used to verify that Perl and its libraries have been installed correctly
<b>piconv</b>	A Perl version of the character encoding converter <b>iconv</b>
<b>pl2pm</b>	A rough tool for converting Perl4 .pl files to Perl5 .pm modules
<b>pod2html</b>	Converts files from pod format to HTML format
<b>pod2latex</b>	Converts files from pod format to LaTeX format
<b>pod2man</b>	Converts pod data to formatted *roff input
<b>pod2text</b>	Converts pod data to formatted ASCII text
<b>pod2usage</b>	Prints usage messages from embedded pod docs in files
<b>podchecker</b>	Checks the syntax of pod format documentation files
<b>podselect</b>	Displays selected sections of pod documentation
<b>psed</b>	A Perl version of the stream editor <b>sed</b>
<b>pstruct</b>	Dumps C structures as generated from <code>cc -g -S</code> stabs
<b>s2p</b>	Translates <b>sed</b> scripts to Perl
<b>splain</b>	Is used to force verbose warning diagnostics in Perl
<b>xsubpp</b>	Converts Perl XS code into C code

## 6.34. Texinfo-4.8

The Texinfo package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 14.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

### 6.34.1. Installation of Texinfo

Prepare Texinfo for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Optionally, install the components belonging in a TeX installation:

```
make TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf install-tex
```

The meaning of the make parameter:

```
TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf
```

The `TEXMF` makefile variable holds the location of the root of the TeX tree if, for example, a TeX package will be installed later.

The Info documentation system uses a plain text file to hold its list of menu entries. The file is located at `/usr/share/info/dir`. Unfortunately, due to occasional problems in the Makefiles of various packages, it can sometimes get out of sync with the info pages installed on the system. If the `/usr/share/info/dir` file ever needs to be recreated, the following optional commands will accomplish the task:

```
cd /usr/share/info
rm dir
for f in *
do install-info $f dir 2>/dev/null
done
```

## 6.34.2. Contents of Texinfo

**Installed programs:** info, infokey, install-info, makeinfo, texi2dvi, and texindex

### Short Descriptions

<b>info</b>	Used to read info pages which are similar to man pages, but often go much deeper than just explaining all the available command line options. For example, compare <b>man bison</b> and <b>info bison</b> .
<b>infokey</b>	Compiles a source file containing Info customizations into a binary format
<b>install-info</b>	Used to install info pages; it updates entries in the <b>info</b> index file
<b>makeinfo</b>	Translates the given Texinfo source documents into info pages, plain text, or HTML
<b>texi2dvi</b>	Used to format the given Texinfo document into a device-independent file that can be printed
<b>texindex</b>	Used to sort Texinfo index files

## 6.35. Autoconf-2.59

The Autoconf package contains programs for producing shell scripts that can automatically configure source code.

**Approximate build time:** 0.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, Diffutils, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, and Sed

### 6.35.1. Installation of Autoconf

Prepare Autoconf for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. This takes a long time, about 2 SBUs.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.35.2. Contents of Autoconf

**Installed programs:** autoconf, autoheader, autom4te, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate, and ifnames

#### Short Descriptions

<b>autoconf</b>	Produces shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of Unix-like systems. The configuration scripts it produces are independent—running them does not require the <b>autoconf</b> program.
<b>autoheader</b>	A tool for creating template files of C <i>#define</i> statements for configure to use
<b>autom4te</b>	A wrapper for the M4 macro processor
<b>autoreconf</b>	Automatically runs <b>autoconf</b> , <b>autoheader</b> , <b>aclocal</b> , <b>automake</b> , <b>gettextize</b> , and <b>libtoolize</b> in the correct order to save time when changes are made to <b>autoconf</b> and <b>automake</b> template files
<b>autoscan</b>	Helps to create a <code>configure.in</code> file for a software package; it examines the source files in a directory tree, searching them for common portability issues, and creates a <code>configure.scan</code> file that serves as a preliminary <code>configure.in</code> file for the package
<b>autoupdate</b>	Modifies a <code>configure.in</code> file that still calls <b>autoconf</b> macros by their old names to use the current macro names

**ifnames**

Helps when writing `configure.in` files for a software package; it prints the identifiers that the package uses in C preprocessor conditionals. If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help determine what **configure** needs to check for. It can also fill in gaps in a `configure.in` file generated by **autoscan**

## 6.36. Automake-1.9.5

The Automake package contains programs for generating Makefiles for use with Autoconf.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 8.8 MB

**Installation depends on:** Autoconf, Bash, Coreutils, Diffutils, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, and Sed

### 6.36.1. Installation of Automake

Prepare Automake for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**. This takes a long time, about 5 SBUs.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.36.2. Contents of Automake

**Installed programs:** acinstall, aclocal, aclocal-1.9.5, automake, automake-1.9.5, compile, config.guess, config.sub, depcomp, elisp-comp, install-sh, mdate-sh, missing, mkinstalldirs, py-compile, symlink-tree, and ylwrap

#### Short Descriptions

<b>acinstall</b>	A script that installs aclocal-style M4 files
<b>aclocal</b>	Generates <code>aclocal.m4</code> files based on the contents of <code>configure.in</code> files
<b>aclocal-1.9.5</b>	A hard link to <b>aclocal</b>
<b>automake</b>	A tool for automatically generating <code>Makefile.in</code> files from <code>Makefile.am</code> files. To create all the <code>Makefile.in</code> files for a package, run this program in the top-level directory. By scanning the <code>configure.in</code> file, it automatically finds each appropriate <code>Makefile.am</code> file and generates the corresponding <code>Makefile.in</code> file
<b>automake-1.9.5</b>	A hard link to <b>automake</b>
<b>compile</b>	A wrapper for compilers
<b>config.guess</b>	A script that attempts to guess the canonical triplet for the given build, host, or target architecture
<b>config.sub</b>	A configuration validation subroutine script



<b>depcomp</b>	A script for compiling a program so that dependency information is generated in addition to the desired output
<b>elisp-comp</b>	Byte-compiles Emacs Lisp code
<b>install-sh</b>	A script that installs a program, script, or data file
<b>mdate-sh</b>	A script that prints the modification time of a file or directory
<b>missing</b>	A script acting as a common stub for missing GNU programs during an installation
<b>mkinstalldirs</b>	A script that creates a directory tree
<b>py-compile</b>	Compiles a Python program
<b>symlink-tree</b>	A script to create a symlink tree of a directory tree
<b>ylwrap</b>	A wrapper for <b>lex</b> and <b>yacc</b>

## 6.37. Bash-3.0

The Bash package contains the Bourne-Again SHell.

**Approximate build time:** 1.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 20.6 MB

**Installation depends on:** Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed.

### 6.37.1. Installation of Bash

The following patch fixes various issues, including a problem where Bash will sometimes only show 33 characters on a line, then wrap to the next:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bash-3.0-fixes-3.patch
```

Bash also has issues when compiled against newer versions of Glibc. The following patch resolves this problem:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bash-3.0-avoid_WCONTINUED-1.patch
```

Prepare Bash for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin \  
--without-bash-malloc --with-installed-readline
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--with-installed-readline*

This options tells Bash to use the `readline` library that is already installed on the system rather than using its own `readline` version.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: `make tests`.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Run the newly compiled `bash` program (replacing the one that is currently being executed):

```
exec /bin/bash --login +h
```



#### Note

The parameters used make the `bash` process an interactive login shell and continue to disable hashing so that new programs are found as they become available.

## 6.37.2. Contents of Bash

**Installed programs:** bash, bashbug, and sh (link to bash)

### Short Descriptions

- bash** A widely-used command interpreter; it performs many types of expansions and substitutions on a given command line before executing it, thus making this interpreter a powerful tool
- bashbug** A shell script to help the user compose and mail standard formatted bug reports concerning **bash**
- sh** A symlink to the **bash** program; when invoked as **sh**, **bash** tries to mimic the startup behavior of historical versions of **sh** as closely as possible, while conforming to the POSIX standard as well

## 6.38. File-4.13

The File package contains a utility for determining the type of a given file or files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.2 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Zlib

### 6.38.1. Installation of File

Prepare File for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.38.2. Contents of File

**Installed programs:** file

**Installed library:** libmagic.[a,so]

#### Short Descriptions

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| <b>file</b>     | Tries to classify each given file; it does this by performing several tests—file system tests, magic number tests, and language tests |
| <b>libmagic</b> | Contains routines for magic number recognition, used by the <b>file</b> program   |

## 6.39. Libtool-1.5.14

The Libtool package contains the GNU generic library support script. It wraps the complexity of using shared libraries in a consistent, portable interface.

**Approximate build time:** 1.5 SBU

**Required disk space:** 19.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.39.1. Installation of Libtool

Prepare Libtool for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.39.2. Contents of Libtool

**Installed programs:** libtool and libtoolize

**Installed libraries:** libltdl.[a,so]

#### Short Descriptions

<b>libtool</b>	Provides generalized library-building support services
<b>libtoolize</b>	Provides a standard way to add <b>libtool</b> support to a package
<b>libltdl</b>	Hides the various difficulties of dlopening libraries

## 6.40. Bzip2-1.0.3

The Bzip2 package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. Compressing text files with **bzip2** yields a much better compression percentage than with the traditional **gzip**.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 3.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, and Make

### 6.40.1. Installation of Bzip2

Prepare Bzip2 for compilation with:

```
make -f Makefile-libbz2_so
make clean
```

The `-f` flag will cause Bzip2 to be built using a different Makefile file, in this case the `Makefile-libbz2_so` file, which creates a dynamic `libbz2.so` library and links the Bzip2 utilities against it.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

If reinstalling Bzip2, perform **rm -f /usr/bin/bz\*** first, otherwise the following **make install** will fail.

Install the programs:

```
make install
```

Install the shared **bzip2** binary into the `/bin` directory, make some necessary symbolic links, and clean up:

```
cp bzip2-shared /bin/bzip2
cp -a libbz2.so* /lib
ln -s ../../lib/libbz2.so.1.0 /usr/lib/libbz2.so
rm /usr/bin/{bunzip2,bzcat,bzip2}
ln -s bzip2 /bin/bunzip2
ln -s bzip2 /bin/bzcat
```

### 6.40.2. Contents of Bzip2

**Installed programs:** bunzip2 (link to bzip2), bzcat (link to bzip2), bzcmp, bzdiff, bzegrep, bzfgrep, bzgrep, bzip2, bzip2recover, bzless, and bzmores

**Installed libraries:** libbz2.[a,so]

#### Short Descriptions

<b>bunzip2</b>	Decompresses bziped files
<b>bzcat</b>	Decompresses to standard output

<b>bzcmp</b>	Runs <b>cmp</b> on bziped files
<b>bzdiff</b>	Runs <b>diff</b> on bziped files
<b>bzgrep</b>	Runs <b>grep</b> on bziped files
<b>bzegrep</b>	Runs <b>egrep</b> on bziped files
<b>bzfgrep</b>	Runs <b>fgrep</b> on bziped files
<b>bzip2</b>	Compresses files using the Burrows-Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm with Huffman coding; the compression rate is better than that achieved by more conventional compressors using “Lempel-Ziv” algorithms, like <b>gzip</b>
<b>bzip2recover</b>	Tries to recover data from damaged bziped files
<b>bzless</b>	Runs <b>less</b> on bziped files
<b>bzmore</b>	Runs <b>more</b> on bziped files
<code>libbz2*</code>	The library implementing lossless, block-sorting data compression, using the Burrows-Wheeler algorithm

## 6.41. Diffutils-2.8.1

The Diffutils package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 5.6 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.41.1. Installation of Diffutils

Prepare Diffutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.41.2. Contents of Diffutils

**Installed programs:** cmp, diff, diff3, and sdiff

#### Short Descriptions

- cmp**      Compares two files and reports whether or in which bytes they differ
- diff**     Compares two files or directories and reports which lines in the files differ
- diff3**    Compares three files line by line
- sdiff**    Merges two files and interactively outputs the results



## 6.42. Kbd-1.12

The Kbd package contains key-table files and keyboard utilities.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 11.8 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Gzip, M4, Make, and Sed

### 6.42.1. Installation of Kbd

Prepare Kbd for compilation:

```
./configure
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.42.2. Contents of Kbd

**Installed programs:** chvt, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, getkeycodes, getunimap, kbd\_mode, kbdrate, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, openvt, psfaddtable (link to psfxtable), psfgettable (link to psfxtable), psfstrietable (link to psfxtable), psfxtable, resizecons, setfont, setkeycodes, setleds, setlogcons, setmetamode, setvesablank, showconsolefont, showkey, unicode\_start, and unicode\_stop

### Short Descriptions

<b>chvt</b>	Changes the foreground virtual terminal
<b>deallocvt</b>	Deallocates unused virtual terminals
<b>dumpkeys</b>	Dumps the keyboard translation tables
<b>fgconsole</b>	Prints the number of the active virtual terminal
<b>getkeycodes</b>	Prints the kernel scancode-to-keycode mapping table
<b>getunimap</b>	Prints the currently used unicode-to-font mapping table
<b>kbd_mode</b>	Reports or sets the keyboard mode
<b>kbdrate</b>	Sets the keyboard repeat and delay rates
<b>loadkeys</b>	Loads the keyboard translation tables
<b>loadunimap</b>	Loads the kernel unicode-to-font mapping table

<b>mapscrn</b>	An obsolete program that used to load a user-defined output character mapping table into the console driver; this is now done by <b>setfont</b>
<b>openvt</b>	Starts a program on a new virtual terminal (VT)
<b>psfaddtable</b>	A link to <b>psfxtable</b>
<b>psfgettable</b>	A link to <b>psfxtable</b>
<b>psfstrietable</b>	A link to <b>psfxtable</b>
<b>psfxtable</b>	Handle Unicode character tables for console fonts
<b>resizecons</b>	Changes the kernel idea of the console size
<b>setfont</b>	Changes the Enhanced Graphic Adapter (EGA) and Video Graphics Array (VGA) fonts on the console
<b>setkeycodes</b>	Loads kernel scancode-to-keycode mapping table entries; this is useful if there are unusual keys on the keyboard
<b>setleds</b>	Sets the keyboard flags and Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs)
<b>setlogcons</b>	Sends kernel messages to the console
<b>setmetamode</b>	Defines the keyboard meta-key handling
<b>setvesablank</b>	Lets the user adjust the built-in hardware screensaver (a blank screen)
<b>showconsolefont</b>	Shows the current EGA/VGA console screen font
<b>showkey</b>	Reports the scancodes, keycodes, and ASCII codes of the keys pressed on the keyboard
<b>unicode_start</b>	Puts the keyboard and console in UNICODE mode. Never use it on LFS, because applications are not configured to support UNICODE.
<b>unicode_stop</b>	Reverts keyboard and console from UNICODE mode

## 6.43. E2fsprogs-1.37

The E2fsprogs package contains the utilities for handling the `ext2` file system. It also supports the `ext3` journaling file system.

**Approximate build time:** 0.6 SBU

**Required disk space:** 40.0 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo

### 6.43.1. Installation of E2fsprogs

Fix a compilation error in E2fsprogs' testsuite:

```
sed -i -e 's/-DTEST/$(ALL_CFLAGS) &/' lib/e2p/Makefile.in
```

It is recommended that E2fsprogs be built in a subdirectory of the source tree:

```
mkdir build
cd build
```

Prepare E2fsprogs for compilation:

```
../configure --prefix=/usr --with-root-prefix="" \
  --enable-elf-shlibs --disable-evms
```

The meaning of the configure options:

*--with-root-prefix=""*

Certain programs (such as the `e2fsck` program) are considered essential programs. When, for example, `/usr` is not mounted, these programs still need to be available. They belong in directories like `/lib` and `/sbin`. If this option is not passed to E2fsprogs' `configure`, the programs are installed into the `/usr` directory.

*--enable-elf-shlibs*

This creates the shared libraries which some programs in this package use.

*--disable-evms*

This disables the building of the Enterprise Volume Management System (EVMS) plugin. This plugin is not up-to-date with the latest EVMS internal interfaces and EVMS is not installed as part of a base LFS system, so the plugin is not required. See the EVMS website at <http://evms.sourceforge.net/> for more information regarding EVMS.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: `make check`.

Install the binaries and documentation:

```
make install
```

Install the shared libraries:

```
make install-libs
```

## 6.43.2. Contents of E2fsprogs

**Installed programs:** badblocks, blkid, chattr, compile\_et, debugfs, dumpe2fs, e2fsck, e2image, e2label, findfs, fsck, fsck.ext2, fsck.ext3, logsave, lsattr, mk\_cmds, mke2fs, mkfs.ext2, mkfs.ext3, mklost+found, resize2fs, tune2fs, and uuidgen.

**Installed libraries:** libblkid.[a,so], libcom\_err.[a,so], libe2p.[a,so], libext2fs.[a,so], libss.[a,so], and libuuid.[a,so]

### Short Descriptions

<b>badblocks</b>	Searches a device (usually a disk partition) for bad blocks
<b>blkid</b>	A command line utility to locate and print block device attributes
<b>chattr</b>	Changes the attributes of files on an ext2 file system; it also changes ext3 file systems, the journaling version of ext2 file systems
<b>compile_et</b>	An error table compiler; it converts a table of error-code names and messages into a C source file suitable for use with the com_err library
<b>debugfs</b>	A file system debugger; it can be used to examine and change the state of an ext2 file system
<b>dumpe2fs</b>	Prints the super block and blocks group information for the file system present on a given device
<b>e2fsck</b>	Is used to check, and optionally repair ext2 file systems and ext3 file systems
<b>e2image</b>	Is used to save critical ext2 file system data to a file
<b>e2label</b>	Displays or changes the file system label on the ext2 file system present on a given device
<b>findfs</b>	Finds a file system by label or Universally Unique Identifier (UUID)
<b>fsck</b>	Is used to check, and optionally repair, file systems
<b>fsck.ext2</b>	By default checks ext2 file systems
<b>fsck.ext3</b>	By default checks ext3 file systems
<b>logsave</b>	Saves the output of a command in a log file
<b>lsattr</b>	Lists the attributes of files on a second extended file system
<b>mk_cmds</b>	Converts a table of command names and help messages into a C source file suitable for use with the libss subsystem library
<b>mke2fs</b>	Creates an ext2 or ext3 file system on the given device

<b>mkfs.ext2</b>	By default creates <code>ext2</code> file systems
<b>mkfs.ext3</b>	By default creates <code>ext3</code> file systems
<b>mklost+found</b>	Used to create a <code>lost+found</code> directory on an <code>ext2</code> file system; it pre-allocates disk blocks to this directory to lighten the task of <b>e2fsck</b>
<b>resize2fs</b>	Can be used to enlarge or shrink an <code>ext2</code> file system
<b>tune2fs</b>	Adjusts tunable file system parameters on an <code>ext2</code> file system
<b>uuidgen</b>	Creates new UUIDs. Each new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created, on the local system and on other systems, in the past and in the future
<code>libblkid</code>	Contains routines for device identification and token extraction
<code>libcom_err</code>	The common error display routine
<code>libe2p</code>	Used by <b>dumpe2fs</b> , <b>chattr</b> , and <b>lsattr</b>
<code>libext2fs</code>	Contains routines to enable user-level programs to manipulate an <code>ext2</code> file system
<code>libss</code>	Used by <b>debugfs</b>
<code>libuuid</code>	Contains routines for generating unique identifiers for objects that may be accessible beyond the local system

## 6.44. Grep-2.5.1a

The Grep package contains programs for searching through files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Make, Sed, and Texinfo

### 6.44.1. Installation of Grep

Prepare Grep for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.44.2. Contents of Grep

**Installed programs:** `egrep` (link to `grep`), `fgrep` (link to `grep`), and `grep`

#### Short Descriptions

**egrep** Prints lines matching an extended regular expression

**fgrep** Prints lines matching a list of fixed strings

**grep** Prints lines matching a basic regular expression

## 6.45. GRUB-0.96

The GRUB package contains the GRand Unified Bootloader.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 10.0 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

### 6.45.1. Installation of GRUB

This package is known to have issues when its default optimization flags (including the `-march` and `-mcpu` options) are changed. If any environment variables that override default optimizations have been defined, such as `CFLAGS` and `CXXFLAGS`, unset them when building GRUB.

Prepare GRUB for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Note that the test results will always show the error “ufs2\_stage1\_5 is too big.” This is due to a compiler issue, but can be ignored unless you plan to boot from an UFS partition. The partitions are normally only used by Sun workstations.

Install the package:

```
make install
mkdir /boot/grub
cp /usr/lib/grub/i386-pc/stage{1,2} /boot/grub
```

Replace `i386-pc` with whatever directory is appropriate for the hardware in use.

The `i386-pc` directory contains a number of `*stage1_5` files, different ones for different file systems. Review the files available and copy the appropriate ones to the `/boot/grub` directory. Most users will copy the `e2fs_stage1_5` and/or `reiserfs_stage1_5` files.

### 6.45.2. Contents of GRUB

**Installed programs:** `grub`, `grub-install`, `grub-md5-crypt`, `grub-terminfo`, and `mbchk`

#### Short Descriptions

<b>grub</b>	The Grand Unified Bootloader's command shell
<b>grub-install</b>	Installs GRUB on the given device
<b>grub-md5-crypt</b>	Encrypts a password in MD5 format

<b>grub-terminfo</b>	Generates a terminfo command from a terminfo name; it can be employed if an unknown terminal is being used
<b>mbchk</b>	Checks the format of a multi-boot kernel



## 6.46. Gzip-1.3.5

The Gzip package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.2 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.46.1. Installation of Gzip

Gzip has 2 known security vulnerabilities. The following patch addresses both of them:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../gzip-1.3.5-security_fixes-1.patch
```

Prepare Gzip for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

The `gzexe` script has the location of the `gzip` binary hard-wired into it. Because the location of the binary is changed later, the following command ensures that the new location gets placed into the script:

```
sed -i 's@"BINDIR"@/bin@g' gzexe.in
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move the `gzip` program to the `/bin` directory and create some commonly used symlinks to it:

```
mv /usr/bin/gzip /bin
rm /usr/bin/{gunzip,zcat}
ln -s gzip /bin/gunzip
ln -s gzip /bin/zcat
ln -s gzip /bin/compress
ln -s gunzip /bin/uncompress
```

### 6.46.2. Contents of Gzip

**Installed programs:** `compress` (link to `gzip`), `gunzip` (link to `gzip`), `gzexe`, `gzip`, `uncompress` (link to `gunzip`), `zcat` (link to `gzip`), `zcmp`, `zdiff`, `zegrep`, `zfgrep`, `zforce`, `zgrep`, `zless`, `zmore`, and `znew`

#### Short Descriptions

**compress**            Compresses and decompresses files

**gunzip**              Decompresses gzipped files

<b>gzexe</b>	Creates self-decompressing executable files
<b>gzip</b>	Compresses the given files using Lempel-Ziv (LZ77) coding
<b>uncompress</b>	Decompresses compressed files
<b>zcat</b>	Uncompresses the given gzipped files to standard output
<b>zcmp</b>	Runs <b>cmp</b> on gzipped files
<b>zdiff</b>	Runs <b>diff</b> on gzipped files
<b>zegrep</b>	Runs <b>egrep</b> on gzipped files
<b>zfgrep</b>	Runs <b>fgrep</b> on gzipped files
<b>zforce</b>	Forces a <b>.gz</b> extension on all given files that are gzipped files, so that <b>gzip</b> will not compress them again; this can be useful when file names were truncated during a file transfer
<b>zgrep</b>	Runs <b>grep</b> on gzipped files
<b>zless</b>	Runs <b>less</b> on gzipped files
<b>zmore</b>	Runs <b>more</b> on gzipped files
<b>znew</b>	Re-compresses files from <b>compress</b> format to <b>gzip</b> format— <b>.Z</b> to <b>.gz</b>

## 6.47. Hotplug-2004\_09\_23

The Hotplug package contains scripts that react upon hotplug events generated by the kernel. Such events correspond to every change in the kernel state visible in the `sysfs` filesystem, e.g., the addition and removal of hardware. This package also detects existing hardware during boot and inserts the relevant modules into the running kernel.

**Approximate build time:** 0.01 SBU

**Required disk space:** 460 KB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, Find, Gawk, and Make

### 6.47.1. Installation of Hotplug

Install the Hotplug package:

```
make install
```

Copy a file that the “install” target omits.

```
cp etc/hotplug/pnp.distmap /etc/hotplug
```

Remove the init script that Hotplug installs since we are going to be using the script included in the LFS-Bootscripts package:

```
rm -rf /etc/init.d
```

Network device hotplugging is not yet supported by the LFS-Bootscripts package. For that reason, remove the network hotplug agent:

```
rm -f /etc/hotplug/net.agent
```

Create a directory for storing firmware that can be loaded by **hotplug**:

```
mkdir /lib/firmware
```

### 6.47.2. Contents of Hotplug

**Installed program:** hotplug

**Installed scripts:** /etc/hotplug/\*.rc, /etc/hotplug/\*.agent

**Installed files:** /etc/hotplug/hotplug.functions, /etc/hotplug/blacklist, /etc/hotplug/{pci,usb}, /etc/hotplug/usb.usermap, /etc/hotplug.d, and /var/log/hotplug/events

## Short Descriptions

<b>hotplug</b>	This script is called by default by the Linux kernel when something changes in its internal state (e.g., a new device is added or an existing device is removed)
<b>/etc/hotplug/*.rc</b>	These scripts are used for cold plugging, i.e., detecting and acting upon hardware already present during system startup. They are called by the <code>hotplug</code> initscript included in the LFS-Bootscripts package. The <code>*.rc</code> scripts try to recover hotplug events that were lost during system boot because, for example, the root filesystem was not mounted by the kernel
<b>/etc/hotplug/*.agent</b>	These scripts are called by <b>hotplug</b> in response to different types of hotplug events generated by the kernel. Their action is to insert corresponding kernel modules and call any user-provided scripts
<code>/etc/hotplug/blacklist</code>	This file contains the list of modules that should never be inserted into the kernel by the Hotplug scripts
<code>/etc/hotplug/hotplug.functions</code>	This file contains common functions used by other scripts in the Hotplug package
<code>/etc/hotplug/{pci,usb}</code>	These directories contain user-written handlers for hotplug events
<code>/etc/hotplug/usb.usermap</code>	This file contains rules that determine which user-defined handlers to call for each USB device, based on its vendor ID and other attributes
<code>/etc/hotplug.d</code>	This directory contains programs (or symlinks to them) that are interested in receiving hotplug events. For example, Udev puts its symlink here during installation
<code>/lib/firmware</code>	This directory contains the firmware for devices that need to have their firmware loaded before use
<code>/var/log/hotplug/events</code>	This file contains all the events that <b>hotplug</b> has called since bootup

## 6.48. Man-1.5p

The Man package contains programs for finding and viewing man pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.48.1. Installation of Man

Two adjustments need to be made to the sources of Man.

The first is a **sed** substitution to add the `-R` switch to the `PAGER` variable so that escape sequences are properly handled by Less:

```
sed -i 's@-is@&R@g' configure
```

The second is also a **sed** substitution to comment out the “`MANPATH /usr/man`” line in the `man.conf` file to prevent redundant results when using programs such as **whatis**:

```
sed -i 's@MANPATH./usr/man@#&@g' src/man.conf.in
```

Prepare Man for compilation:

```
./configure -confdir=/etc
```

The meaning of the configure options:

`-confdir=/etc`

This tells the **man** program to look for the `man.conf` configuration file in the `/etc` directory.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```



#### Note

If you will be working on a terminal that does not support text attributes such as color and bold, you can disable Select Graphic Rendition (SGR) escape sequences by editing the `man.conf` file and adding the `-c` option to the `NROFF` variable. If you use multiple terminal types for one computer it may be better to selectively add the `GROFF_NO_SGR` environment variable for the terminals that do not support SGR.

If the character set of the locale uses 8-bit characters, search for the line beginning with “NROFF” in `/etc/man.conf`, and verify that it matches the following:

```
NROFF /usr/bin/nroff -Tlatin1 -mandoc
```

Note that “latin1” should be used even if it is not the character set of the locale. The reason is that, according to the specification, **groff** has no means of typesetting characters outside International Organization for Standards (ISO) 8859-1 without some strange escape codes. When formatting man pages, **groff** thinks that they are in the ISO 8859-1 encoding and this `-Tlatin1` switch tells **groff** to use the same encoding for output. Since **groff** does no recoding of input characters, the formatted result is really in the same encoding as input, and therefore it is usable as the input for a pager.

This does not solve the problem of a non-working **man2dvi** program for localized man pages in non-ISO 8859-1 locales. Also, it does not work with multibyte character sets. The first problem does not currently have a solution. The second issue is not of concern because the LFS installation does not support multibyte character sets.

Additional information with regards to the compression of man and info pages can be found in the BLFS book at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/cvs/postlfs/compressdoc.html>.

## 6.48.2. Contents of Man

**Installed programs:** `apropos`, `makewhatis`, `man`, `man2dvi`, `man2html`, and `whatis`

### Short Descriptions

<b>apropos</b>	Searches the <b>whatis</b> database and displays the short descriptions of system commands that contain a given string
<b>makewhatis</b>	Builds the <b>whatis</b> database; it reads all the man pages in the <code>MANPATH</code> and writes the name and a short description in the <b>whatis</b> database for each page
<b>man</b>	Formats and displays the requested on-line man page
<b>man2dvi</b>	Converts a man page into dvi format
<b>man2html</b>	Converts a man page into HTML
<b>whatis</b>	Searches the <b>whatis</b> database and displays the short descriptions of system commands that contain the given keyword as a separate word

## 6.49. Make-3.80

The Make package contains a program for compiling packages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 7.1 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, and Sed

### 6.49.1. Installation of Make

Prepare Make for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.49.2. Contents of Make

**Installed program:** make

#### Short Descriptions

**make** Automatically determines which pieces of a package need to be (re)compiled and then issues the relevant commands

## 6.50. Module-Init-Tools-3.1

The Module-Init-Tools package contains programs for handling kernel modules in Linux kernels greater than or equal to version 2.5.47.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.9 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Flex, GCC, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, and Sed

### 6.50.1. Installation of Module-Init-Tools

Module-Init-Tools attempts to rewrite its `modprobe.conf` man page during the build process. This is unnecessary and also relies on `docbook2man` — which is not installed in LFS. Run the following command to avoid this:

```
touch modprobe.conf.5
```

Prepare Module-Init-Tools for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix="" --enable-zlib
```

The meaning of the configure options:

`--enable-zlib`

This allows the Module-Init-Tools package to handle compressed kernel modules.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: `make check`.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.50.2. Contents of Module-Init-Tools

**Installed programs:** `depmod`, `insmod`, `insmod.static`, `lsmod` (link to `insmod`), `modinfo`, `modprobe` (link to `insmod`), and `rmmod` (link to `insmod`)

#### Short Descriptions

<b>depmod</b>	Creates a dependency file based on the symbols it finds in the existing set of modules; this dependency file is used by <b>modprobe</b> to automatically load the required modules
<b>insmod</b>	Installs a loadable module in the running kernel
<b>insmod.static</b>	A statically compiled version of <b>insmod</b>



<b>lsmod</b>	Lists currently loaded modules
<b>modinfo</b>	Examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean
<b>modprobe</b>	Uses a dependency file, created by <b>depmod</b> , to automatically load relevant modules
<b>rmmod</b>	Unloads modules from the running kernel

## 6.51. Patch-2.5.4

The Patch package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a “patch” file typically created by the **diff** program.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.5 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.51.1. Installation of Patch

Prepare Patch for compilation. The preprocessor flag `-D_GNU_SOURCE` is only needed on the PowerPC platform. It can be left out on other architectures:

```
CPPFLAGS=-D_GNU_SOURCE ./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.51.2. Contents of Patch

**Installed program:** patch

#### Short Descriptions

**patch**    Modifies files according to a patch file. A patch file is normally a difference listing created with the **diff** program. By applying these differences to the original files, **patch** creates the patched versions.

## 6.52. Procps-3.2.5

The Procps package contains programs for monitoring processes.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 2.3 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Ncurses

### 6.52.1. Installation of Procps

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.52.2. Contents of Procps

**Installed programs:** free, kill, pgrep, pkill, pmap, ps, skill, snice, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w, and watch

**Installed library:** libproc.so

#### Short Descriptions

<b>free</b>	Reports the amount of free and used memory (both physical and swap memory) in the system
<b>kill</b>	Sends signals to processes
<b>pgrep</b>	Looks up processes based on their name and other attributes
<b>pkill</b>	Signals processes based on their name and other attributes
<b>pmap</b>	Reports the memory map of the given process
<b>ps</b>	Lists the current running processes
<b>skill</b>	Sends signals to processes matching the given criteria
<b>snice</b>	Changes the scheduling priority of processes matching the given criteria
<b>sysctl</b>	Modifies kernel parameters at run time
<b>tload</b>	Prints a graph of the current system load average
<b>top</b>	Displays a list of the most CPU intensive processes; it provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time
<b>uptime</b>	Reports how long the system has been running, how many users are logged on, and the system load averages
<b>vmstat</b>	Reports virtual memory statistics, giving information about processes, memory, paging, block Input/Output (IO), traps, and CPU activity

- w** Shows which users are currently logged on, where, and since when
- watch** Runs a given command repeatedly, displaying the first screen-full of its output; this allows a user to watch the output change over time
- `libproc` Contains the functions used by most programs in this package

## 6.53. Psmisc-21.6

The Psmisc package contains programs for displaying information about running processes.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

### 6.53.1. Installation of Psmisc

Prepare Psmisc for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --exec-prefix=""
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--exec-prefix=""
```

This ensures that the Psmisc binaries will install into `/bin` instead of `/usr/bin`. This is the correct location according to the FHS, because some of the Psmisc binaries are used by the LFS-Bootscripts package.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

There is no reason for the `pstree` and `pstree.x11` programs to reside in `/bin`. Therefore, move them to `/usr/bin`:

```
mv /bin/pstree* /usr/bin
```

By default, Psmisc's `pidof` program is not installed. This usually is not a problem because it is installed later in the Sysvinit package, which provides a better `pidof` program. If Sysvinit will not be used for a particular system, complete the installation of Psmisc by creating the following symlink:

```
ln -s killall /bin/pidof
```

### 6.53.2. Contents of Psmisc

**Installed programs:** `fuser`, `killall`, `pstree`, and `pstree.x11` (link to `pstree`)

#### Short Descriptions

<b>fuser</b>	Reports the Process IDs (PIDs) of processes that use the given files or file systems
<b>killall</b>	Kills processes by name; it sends a signal to all processes running any of the given commands

**pstree**            Displays running processes as a tree  
**pstree.x11**       Same as **pstree**, except that it waits for confirmation before exiting

## 6.54. Shadow-4.0.9

The Shadow package contains programs for handling passwords in a secure way.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 13.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.54.1. Installation of Shadow

Prepare Shadow for compilation:

```
./configure --libdir=/lib --enable-shared
```

Remove the installation of the **groups** program, and its man page as Coreutils provides a better version:

```
sed -i 's/groups$(EXEEXT) //' src/Makefile
sed -i '/groups/d' man/Makefile
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Shadow uses two files to configure authentication settings for the system. Install these two configuration files:

```
cp etc/{limits,login.access} /etc
```

Instead of using the default *crypt* method, use the more secure *MD5* method of password encryption, which also allows passwords longer than 8 characters. It is also necessary to change the obsolete `/var/spool/mail` location for user mailboxes that Shadow uses by default to the `/var/mail` location used currently. Both of these can be accomplished by changing the relevant configuration file while copying it to its destination:

```
sed -e 's@#MD5_CRYPT_ENAB.no@MD5_CRYPT_ENAB yes@' \
    -e 's@/var/spool/mail@/var/mail@' \
    etc/login.defs.linux > /etc/login.defs
```

Move a misplaced program to its proper location:

```
mv /usr/bin/passwd /bin
```

Move Shadow's libraries to more appropriate locations:

```
mv /lib/libshadow.*a /usr/lib
rm /lib/libshadow.so
ln -sf ../../lib/libshadow.so.0 /usr/lib/libshadow.so
```

The `-D` option of the **useradd** program requires the `/etc/default` directory for it to work properly:

```
mkdir /etc/default
```

## 6.54.2. Configuring Shadow

This package contains utilities to add, modify, and delete users and groups; set and change their passwords; and perform other administrative tasks. For a full explanation of what *password shadowing* means, see the `doc/HOWTO` file within the unpacked source tree. If using Shadow support, keep in mind that programs which need to verify passwords (display managers, FTP programs, `pop3` daemons, etc.) must be Shadow-compliant. That is, they need to be able to work with shadowed passwords.

To enable shadowed passwords, run the following command:

```
pwconv
```

To enable shadowed group passwords, run:

```
grpconv
```

Under normal circumstances, passwords will not have been created yet. However, if returning to this section later to enable shadowing, reset any current user passwords with the **passwd** command or any group passwords with the **gpasswd** command.

## 6.54.3. Setting the root password

Choose a password for user *root* and set it by running:

```
passwd root
```

## 6.54.4. Contents of Shadow

**Installed programs:** `chage`, `chfn`, `chpasswd`, `chsh`, `expiry`, `faillog`, `gpasswd`, `groupadd`, `groupdel`, `groupmod`, `groups`, `grpck`, `grpconv`, `grpunconv`, `lastlog`, `login`, `logoutd`, `mkpasswd`, `newgrp`, `newusers`, `passwd`, `pwck`, `pwconv`, `pwunconv`, `sg` (link to `newgrp`), `useradd`, `userdel`, `usermod`, `vigr` (link to `vipw`), and `vipw`

**Installed libraries:** `libshadow.[a,so]`

### Short Descriptions

<b>chage</b>	Used to change the maximum number of days between obligatory password changes
<b>chfn</b>	Used to change a user's full name and other information
<b>chpasswd</b>	Used to update the passwords of an entire series of user accounts
<b>chsh</b>	Used to change a user's default login shell
<b>expiry</b>	Checks and enforces the current password expiration policy
<b>faillog</b>	Is used to examine the log of login failures, to set a maximum number of failures before an account is blocked, or to reset the failure count
<b>gpasswd</b>	Is used to add and delete members and administrators to groups



<b>groupadd</b>	Creates a group with the given name
<b>groupdel</b>	Deletes the group with the given name
<b>groupmod</b>	Is used to modify the given group's name or GID
<b>groups</b>	Reports the groups of which the given users are members
<b>grpck</b>	Verifies the integrity of the group files <code>/etc/group</code> and <code>/etc/gshadow</code>
<b>grpconv</b>	Creates or updates the shadow group file from the normal group file
<b>grpunconv</b>	Updates <code>/etc/group</code> from <code>/etc/gshadow</code> and then deletes the latter
<b>lastlog</b>	Reports the most recent login of all users or of a given user
<b>login</b>	Is used by the system to let users sign on
<b>logoutd</b>	Is a daemon used to enforce restrictions on log-on time and ports
<b>mkpasswd</b>	Generates random passwords
<b>newgrp</b>	Is used to change the current GID during a login session
<b>newusers</b>	Is used to create or update an entire series of user accounts
<b>passwd</b>	Is used to change the password for a user or group account
<b>pwck</b>	Verifies the integrity of the password files <code>/etc/passwd</code> and <code>/etc/shadow</code>
<b>pwconv</b>	Creates or updates the shadow password file from the normal password file
<b>pwunconv</b>	Updates <code>/etc/passwd</code> from <code>/etc/shadow</code> and then deletes the latter
<b>sg</b>	Executes a given command while the user's GID is set to that of the given group
<b>su</b>	Runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs
<b>useradd</b>	Creates a new user with the given name, or updates the default new-user information
<b>userdel</b>	Deletes the given user account
<b>usermod</b>	Is used to modify the given user's login name, User Identification (UID), shell, initial group, home directory, etc.
<b>vigr</b>	Edits the <code>/etc/group</code> or <code>/etc/gshadow</code> files
<b>vipw</b>	Edits the <code>/etc/passwd</code> or <code>/etc/shadow</code> files
<b>libshadow</b>	Contains functions used by most programs in this package

## 6.55. Sysklogd-1.4.1

The Sysklogd package contains programs for logging system messages, such as those given by the kernel when unusual things happen.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 704 KB

**Installation depends on:** Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make

### 6.55.1. Installation of Sysklogd

The following patch fixes various issues, including a problem building Sysklogd with Linux 2.6 series kernels

```
patch -Np1 -i ../sysklogd-1.4.1-fixes-1.patch
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.55.2. Configuring Sysklogd

Create a new `/etc/syslog.conf` file by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/syslog.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/syslog.conf

auth,authpriv.* -/var/log/auth.log
*.*;auth,authpriv.none -/var/log/sys.log
daemon.* -/var/log/daemon.log
kern.* -/var/log/kern.log
mail.* -/var/log/mail.log
user.* -/var/log/user.log
*.emerg *

# log the bootscript output:
local2.* -/var/log/boot.log

# End /etc/syslog.conf
EOF
```

### 6.55.3. Contents of Sysklogd

**Installed programs:** klogd and syslogd

#### Short Descriptions

**klogd**      A system daemon for intercepting and logging kernel messages

**syslogd**    Logs the messages that system programs offer for logging. Every logged message contains at least a date stamp and a hostname, and normally the program's name too, but that depends on how trusting the logging daemon is told to be

## 6.56. Sysvinit-2.86

The Sysvinit package contains programs for controlling the startup, running, and shutdown of the system.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1012 KB

**Installation depends on:** Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, and Make

### 6.56.1. Installation of Sysvinit

When run-levels are changed (for example, when halting the system), **init** sends termination signals to those processes that **init** itself started and that should not be running in the new run-level. While doing this, **init** outputs messages like “Sending processes the TERM signal” which seem to imply that it is sending these signals to all currently running processes. To avoid this misinterpretation, modify the source so that these messages read like “Sending processes started by init the TERM signal” instead:

```
sed -i 's@Sending processes@& started by init@g' \  
src/init.c
```

Compile the package:

```
make -C src
```

Install the package:

```
make -C src install
```

## 6.56.2. Configuring Sysvinit

Create a new file `/etc/inittab` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/inittab << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/inittab

id:3:initdefault:

si::sysinit:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc sysinit

l0:0:wait:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc 0
l1:S1:wait:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc 1
l2:2:wait:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc 2
l3:3:wait:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc 3
l4:4:wait:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc 4
l5:5:wait:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc 5
l6:6:wait:/etc/rc.d/init.d/rc 6

ca:12345:ctrlaltdel:/sbin/shutdown -t1 -a -r now

su:S016:once:/sbin/sulogin

1:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty -I '\033(K' tty1 9600
2:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty -I '\033(K' tty2 9600
3:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty -I '\033(K' tty3 9600
4:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty -I '\033(K' tty4 9600
5:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty -I '\033(K' tty5 9600
6:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty -I '\033(K' tty6 9600

# End /etc/inittab
EOF
```

The `-I '\033(K'` option tells **agetty** to send this escape sequence to the terminal before doing anything else. This escape sequence switches the console character set to a user-defined one, which can be modified by running the **setfont** program. The **console** initscript from the LFS-Bootscripts package calls the **setfont** program during system startup. Sending this escape sequence is necessary for people who use non-ISO 8859-1 screen fonts, but it does not affect native English speakers.

### 6.56.3. Contents of Sysvinit

**Installed programs:** halt, init, killall5, last, lastb (link to last), mesg, pidof (link to killall5), poweroff (link to halt), reboot (link to halt), runlevel, shutdown, sulogin, telinit (link to init), utmpdump, and wall

#### Short Descriptions

<b>halt</b>	Normally invokes <b>shutdown</b> with the <code>-h</code> option, except when already in run-level 0, then it tells the kernel to halt the system; it notes in the file <code>/var/log/wtmp</code> that the system is being brought down
<b>init</b>	The first process to be started when the kernel has initialized the hardware which takes over the boot process and starts all the processes it is instructed to
<b>killall5</b>	Sends a signal to all processes, except the processes in its own session so it will not kill the shell running the script that called it
<b>last</b>	Shows which users last logged in (and out), searching back through the <code>/var/log/wtmp</code> file; it also shows system boots, shutdowns, and run-level changes
<b>lastb</b>	Shows the failed login attempts, as logged in <code>/var/log/btmp</code>
<b>mesg</b>	Controls whether other users can send messages to the current user's terminal
<b>mountpoint</b>	Checks if the directory is a mountpoint
<b>pidof</b>	Reports the PIDs of the given programs
<b>poweroff</b>	Tells the kernel to halt the system and switch off the computer (see <b>halt</b> )
<b>reboot</b>	Tells the kernel to reboot the system (see <b>halt</b> )
<b>runlevel</b>	Reports the previous and the current run-level, as noted in the last run-level record in <code>/var/run/utmp</code>
<b>shutdown</b>	Brings the system down in a secure way, signaling all processes and notifying all logged-in users
<b>sulogin</b>	Allows <i>root</i> to log in; it is normally invoked by <b>init</b> when the system goes into single user mode
<b>telinit</b>	Tells <b>init</b> which run-level to change to
<b>utmpdump</b>	Displays the content of the given login file in a more user-friendly format
<b>wall</b>	Writes a message to all logged-in users

## 6.57. Tar-1.15.1

The Tar package contains an archiving program.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 12.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

### 6.57.1. Installation of Tar

Tar has a bug when the `-S` option is used with files larger than 4 GB. The following patch properly fixes this issue:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../tar-1.15.1-sparse_fix-1.patch
```

Prepare Tar for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin --libexecdir=/usr/sbin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue: **make check**.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 6.57.2. Contents of Tar

**Installed programs:** rmt and tar

#### Short Descriptions

**rmt** Remotely manipulates a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection

**tar** Creates, extracts files from, and lists the contents of archives, also known as tarballs

## 6.58. Udev-056

The Udev package contains programs for dynamic creation of device nodes.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.7 MB

**Installation depends on:** Coreutils and Make

### 6.58.1. Installation of Udev

Compile the package:

```
make udevdir=/dev
```

```
udevdir=/dev
```

This tells **udev** in which directory devices nodes are to be created.

To test the results, issue: **make test**.

Install the package:

```
make udevdir=/dev install
```

Udev's configuration is far from ideal by default, so install the configuration files here:

```
cp ../udev-config-3.rules /etc/udev/rules.d/25-lfs.rules
```

Run the **udevstart** program to create our full complement of device nodes.

```
/sbin/udevstart
```

### 6.58.2. Contents of Udev

**Installed programs:** udev, udevd, udevsend, udevstart, udevinfo, and udevtest

**Installed directory:** /etc/udev

#### Short Descriptions

<b>udev</b>	Creates device nodes in <code>/dev</code> or renames network interfaces (not in LFS) in response to hotplug events
<b>udevd</b>	A daemon that reorders hotplug events before submitting them to <b>udev</b> , thus avoiding various race conditions
<b>udevsend</b>	Delivers hotplug events to <b>udevd</b>
<b>udevstart</b>	Creates device nodes in <code>/dev</code> that correspond to drivers compiled directly into the kernel; it performs that task by simulating hotplug events presumably dropped by the kernel before invocation of this program (e.g., because the root filesystem has not been mounted) and submitting such synthetic hotplug events to <b>udev</b>



- udevinfo** Allows users to query the **udev** database for information on any device currently present on the system; it also provides a way to query any device in the `sysfs` tree to help create udev rules
- udevtest** Simulates a **udev** run for the given device, and prints out the name of the node the real **udev** would have created or (not in LFS) the name of the renamed network interface
- `/etc/udev` Contains **udev** configuration files, device permissions, and rules for device naming

## 6.59. Util-linux-2.12q

The Util-linux package contains miscellaneous utility programs. Among them are utilities for handling file systems, consoles, partitions, and messages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 11.6 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Sed, and Zlib

### 6.59.1. FHS compliance notes

The FHS recommends using the `/var/lib/hwclock` directory instead of the usual `/etc` directory as the location for the `adjtime` file. To make the `hwclock` program FHS-compliant, run the following:

```
sed -i 's@etc/adjtime@var/lib/hwclock/adjtime@g' \
    hwclock/hwclock.c
mkdir -p /var/lib/hwclock
```

### 6.59.2. Installation of Util-linux

Util-linux fails to compile against newer versions of Linux-Libc-Headers. The following patch properly fixes this issue:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../util-linux-2.12q-cramfs-1.patch
```

Prepare Util-linux for compilation:

```
./configure
```

Compile the package:

```
make HAVE_KILL=yes HAVE_SLN=yes
```

The meaning of the make parameters:

*HAVE\_KILL=yes*

This prevents the **kill** program (already installed by Procps) from being built and installed again.

*HAVE\_SLN=yes*

This prevents the **sln** program (a statically linked version of **ln** already installed by Glibc) from being built and installed again.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package and move the **logger** binary to `/bin` as it is needed by the LFS-Bootscripts package:

```
make HAVE_KILL=yes HAVE_SLN=yes install
mv /usr/bin/logger /bin
```

### 6.59.3. Contents of Util-linux

**Installed programs:** agetty, arch, blockdev, cal, cfdisk, chkdupexe, col, colcrt, colrm, column, ctrlaltdel, cytune, ddate, dmesg, elvtune, fdformat, fdisk, fsck.cramfs, fsck.minix, getopt, hexdump, hwclock, ipcrm, ipcs, isosize, line, logger, look, losetup, mcookie, mkfs, mkfs.bfs, mkfs.cramfs, mkfs.minix, mkswap, more, mount, namei, pg, pivot\_root, ramsize (link to rdev), raw, rdev, readprofile, rename, renice, rev, rootflags (link to rdev), script, setfdprm, setuid, setterm, sfdisk, swapdev, swapoff (link to swapon), swapon, tunelp, ul, umount, vidmode (link to rdev), whereis, and write

#### Short Descriptions

<b>agetty</b>	Opens a tty port, prompts for a login name, and then invokes the <b>login</b> program
<b>arch</b>	Reports the machine's architecture
<b>blockdev</b>	Allows users to call block device ioctls from the command line
<b>cal</b>	Displays a simple calendar
<b>cfdisk</b>	Manipulates the partition table of the given device
<b>chkdupexe</b>	Finds duplicate executables
<b>col</b>	Filters out reverse line feeds
<b>colcrt</b>	Filters <b>nroff</b> output for terminals that lack some capabilities, such as overstriking and half-lines
<b>colrm</b>	Filters out the given columns
<b>column</b>	Formats a given file into multiple columns
<b>ctrlaltdel</b>	Sets the function of the Ctrl+Alt+Del key combination to a hard or a soft reset
<b>cytune</b>	Tunes the parameters of the serial line drivers for Cyclades cards
<b>ddate</b>	Gives the Discordian date or converts the given Gregorian date to a Discordian one
<b>dmesg</b>	Dumps the kernel boot messages
<b>elvtune</b>	Tunes the performance and interactivity of a block device
<b>fdformat</b>	Low-level formats a floppy disk
<b>fdisk</b>	Manipulates the partition table of the given device
<b>fsck.cramfs</b>	Performs a consistency check on the Cramfs file system on the given device
<b>fsck.minix</b>	Performs a consistency check on the Minix file system on the given device
<b>getopt</b>	Parses options in the given command line
<b>hexdump</b>	Dumps the given file in hexadecimal or in another given format
<b>hwclock</b>	Reads or sets the system's hardware clock, also called the Real-Time Clock (RTC) or Basic Input-Output System (BIOS) clock
<b>ipcrm</b>	Removes the given Inter-Process Communication (IPC) resource

<b>ipcs</b>	Provides IPC status information
<b>isozsize</b>	Reports the size of an iso9660 file system
<b>line</b>	Copies a single line
<b>logger</b>	Enters the given message into the system log
<b>look</b>	Displays lines that begin with the given string
<b>losetup</b>	Sets up and controls loop devices
<b>mcookie</b>	Generates magic cookies (128-bit random hexadecimal numbers) for <b>xauth</b>
<b>mkfs</b>	Builds a file system on a device (usually a hard disk partition)
<b>mkfs.bfs</b>	Creates a Santa Cruz Operations (SCO) bfs file system
<b>mkfs.cramfs</b>	Creates a cramfs file system
<b>mkfs.minix</b>	Creates a Minix file system
<b>mkswap</b>	Initializes the given device or file to be used as a swap area
<b>more</b>	A filter for paging through text one screen at a time
<b>mount</b>	Attaches the file system on the given device to a specified directory in the file-system tree
<b>namei</b>	Shows the symbolic links in the given pathnames
<b>pg</b>	Displays a text file one screen full at a time
<b>pivot_root</b>	Makes the given file system the new root file system of the current process
<b>ramsize</b>	Sets the size of the RAM disk in a bootable image
<b>raw</b>	Used to bind a Linux raw character device to a block device
<b>rdev</b>	Queries and sets the root device, among other things, in a bootable image
<b>readprofile</b>	Reads kernel profiling information
<b>rename</b>	Renames the given files, replacing a given string with another
<b>renice</b>	Alters the priority of running processes
<b>rev</b>	Reverses the lines of a given file
<b>rootflags</b>	Sets the rootflags in a bootable image
<b>script</b>	Makes a typescript of a terminal session
<b>setfdprm</b>	Sets user-provided floppy disk parameters
<b>setsid</b>	Runs the given program in a new session
<b>setterm</b>	Sets terminal attributes
<b>sfdisk</b>	A disk partition table manipulator
<b>swapdev</b>	Sets the swap device in a bootable image

<b>swapoff</b>	Disables devices and files for paging and swapping
<b>swapon</b>	Enables devices and files for paging and swapping and lists the devices and files currently in use
<b>tunelp</b>	Tunes the parameters of the line printer
<b>ul</b>	A filter for translating underscores into escape sequences indicating underlining for the terminal in use
<b>umount</b>	Disconnects a file system from the system's file tree
<b>vidmode</b>	Sets the video mode in a bootable image
<b>whereis</b>	Reports the location of the binary, source, and man page for the given command
<b>write</b>	Sends a message to the given user <i>if</i> that user has not disabled receipt of such messages

## 6.60. About Debugging Symbols

Most programs and libraries are, by default, compiled with debugging symbols included (with `gcc`'s `-g` option). This means that when debugging a program or library that was compiled with debugging information included, the debugger can provide not only memory addresses, but also the names of the routines and variables.

However, the inclusion of these debugging symbols enlarges a program or library significantly. The following is an example of the amount of space these symbols occupy:

- a bash binary with debugging symbols: 1200 KB
- a bash binary without debugging symbols: 480 KB
- Glibc and GCC files (`/lib` and `/usr/lib`) with debugging symbols: 87 MB
- Glibc and GCC files without debugging symbols: 16 MB

Sizes may vary depending on which compiler and C library were used, but when comparing programs with and without debugging symbols, the difference will usually be a factor between two and five.

Because most users will never use a debugger on their system software, a lot of disk space can be regained by removing these symbols. The next section shows how to strip all debugging symbols from the programs and libraries. Additional information on system optimization can be found at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/optimization.txt>.

## 6.61. Stripping Again

If the intended user is not a programmer and does not plan to do any debugging on the system software, the system size can be decreased by about 200 MB by removing the debugging symbols from binaries and libraries. This causes no inconvenience other than not being able to debug the software fully anymore.

Most people who use the command mentioned below do not experience any difficulties. However, it is easy to make a typo and render the new system unusable, so before running the **strip** command, it is a good idea to make a backup of the current situation.

Before performing the stripping, take special care to ensure that none of the binaries that are about to be stripped are running. If unsure whether the user entered chroot with the command given in Section 6.3, “Entering the Chroot Environment,” first exit from chroot:

```
logout
```

Then reenter it with:

```
chroot $LFS /tools/bin/env -i \
  HOME=/root TERM=$TERM PS1='\u:\w\$ ' \
  PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin \
  /tools/bin/bash --login
```

Now the binaries and libraries can be safely stripped:

```
/tools/bin/find /{,usr/}{bin,lib,sbin} -type f \
  -exec /tools/bin/strip --strip-debug '{} ' ';'
```

A large number of files will be reported as having their file format not recognized. These warnings can be safely ignored. These warnings indicate that those files are scripts instead of binaries.

If disk space is very tight, the `--strip-all` option can be used on the binaries in `{,usr/}{bin,sbin}` to gain several more megabytes. Do not use this option on libraries—they will be destroyed.

## 6.62. Cleaning Up

From now on, when reentering the chroot environment after exiting, use the following modified chroot command:

```
chroot "$LFS" /usr/bin/env -i \  
  HOME=/root TERM="$TERM" PS1='\u:\w\$ ' \  
  PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin \  
  /bin/bash --login
```

The reason for this is that the programs in `/tools` are no longer needed. Since they are no longer needed you can delete the `/tools` directory if so desired or tar it up and keep it to build another final system.



### Note

Removing `/tools` will also remove the temporary copies of Tcl, Expect, and DejaGNU which were used for running the toolchain tests. If you need these programs later on, they will need to be recompiled and re-installed. The BLFS book has instructions for this (see <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/>).



# Chapter 7. Setting Up System Bootscripts

## 7.1. Introduction

This chapter details how to install and configure the LFS-Bootscripts package. Most of these scripts will work without modification, but a few require additional configuration files because they deal with hardware-dependent information.

System-V style init scripts are employed in this book because they are widely used. For additional options, a hint detailing the BSD style init setup is available at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/bsd-init.txt>. Searching the LFS mailing lists for “depinit” will also offer additional choices.

If using an alternative style of init scripts, skip this chapter and move on to Chapter 8.

## 7.2. LFS-Bootscripts-3.2.1

The LFS-Bootscripts package contains a set of scripts to start/stop the LFS system at bootup/shutdown.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 0.3 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash and Coreutils

### 7.2.1. Installation of LFS-Bootscripts

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 7.2.2. Contents of LFS-Bootscripts

**Installed scripts:** checkfs, cleanfs, console, functions, halt, hotplug, ifdown, ifup, localnet, mountfs, mountkernfs, network, rc, reboot, sendsignals, setclock, static, swap, sysklogd, template, and udev

#### Short Descriptions

<b>checkfs</b>	Checks the integrity of the file systems before they are mounted (with the exception of journal and network based file systems)
<b>cleanfs</b>	Removes files that should not be preserved between reboots, such as those in <code>/var/run/</code> and <code>/var/lock/</code> ; it re-creates <code>/var/run/utmp</code> and removes the possibly present <code>/etc/nologin</code> , <code>/fastboot</code> , and <code>/forcefsck</code> files
<b>console</b>	Loads the correct keymap table for the desired keyboard layout; it also sets the screen font
<b>functions</b>	Contains common functions, such as error and status checking, that are used by several bootscripts
<b>halt</b>	Halts the system
<b>hotplug</b>	Loads modules for system devices
<b>ifdown</b>	Assists the network script with stopping network devices
<b>ifup</b>	Assists the network script with starting network devices
<b>localnet</b>	Sets up the system's hostname and local loopback device
<b>mountfs</b>	Mounts all file systems, except ones that are marked <i>noauto</i> or are network based
<b>mountkernfs</b>	Mounts virtual kernel file systems, such as <code>proc</code>
<b>network</b>	Sets up network interfaces, such as network cards, and sets up the default gateway (where applicable)
<b>rc</b>	The master run-level control script; it is responsible for running all the other bootscripts one-by-one, in a sequence determined by the name of the symbolic links being processed
<b>reboot</b>	Reboots the system

<b>sendsignals</b>	Makes sure every process is terminated before the system reboots or halts
<b>setclock</b>	Resets the kernel clock to local time in case the hardware clock is not set to UTC time
<b>static</b>	Provides the functionality needed to assign a static Internet Protocol (IP) address to a network interface
<b>swap</b>	Enables and disables swap files and partitions
<b>sysklogd</b>	Starts and stops the system and kernel log daemons
<b>template</b>	A template to create custom bootscripts for other daemons
<b>udev</b>	Prepares the <code>/dev</code> directory and starts Udev

## 7.3. How Do These Bootscripts Work?

Linux uses a special booting facility named SysVinit that is based on a concept of *run-levels*. It can be quite different from one system to another, so it cannot be assumed that because things worked in one particular Linux distribution, they should work the same in LFS too. LFS has its own way of doing things, but it respects generally accepted standards.

SysVinit (which will be referred to as “init” from now on) works using a run-levels scheme. There are seven (numbered 0 to 6) run-levels (actually, there are more run-levels, but they are for special cases and are generally not used. See `init(8)` for more details), and each one of those corresponds to the actions the computer is supposed to perform when it starts up. The default run-level is 3. Here are the descriptions of the different run-levels as they are implemented:

```
0: halt the computer
1: single-user mode
2: multi-user mode without networking
3: multi-user mode with networking
4: reserved for customization, otherwise does the same as 3
5: same as 4, it is usually used for GUI login (like X's xdm or KDE's kdm)
6: reboot the computer
```

The command used to change run-levels is `init [runlevel]`, where `[runlevel]` is the target run-level. For example, to reboot the computer, a user could issue the `init 6` command, which is an alias for the `reboot` command. Likewise, `init 0` is an alias for the `halt` command.

There are a number of directories under `/etc/rc.d` that look like `rc?.d` (where `?` is the number of the run-level) and `rcsysinit.d`, all containing a number of symbolic links. Some begin with a *K*, the others begin with an *S*, and all of them have two numbers following the initial letter. The *K* means to stop (kill) a service and the *S* means to start a service. The numbers determine the order in which the scripts are run, from 00 to 99—the lower the number the earlier it gets executed. When `init` switches to another run-level, the appropriate services are either started or stopped, depending on the runlevel chosen.

The real scripts are in `/etc/rc.d/init.d`. They do the actual work, and the symlinks all point to them. Killing links and starting links point to the same script in `/etc/rc.d/init.d`. This is because the scripts can be called with different parameters like `start`, `stop`, `restart`, `reload`, and `status`. When a *K* link is encountered, the appropriate script is run with the `stop` argument. When an *S* link is encountered, the appropriate script is run with the `start` argument.

There is one exception to this explanation. Links that start with an *S* in the `rc0.d` and `rc6.d` directories will not cause anything to be started. They will be called with the parameter `stop` to stop something. The logic behind this is that when a user is going to reboot or halt the system, nothing needs to be started. The system only needs to be stopped.

These are descriptions of what the arguments make the scripts do:

`start`

The service is started.

`stop`

The service is stopped.

*restart*

The service is stopped and then started again.

*reload*

The configuration of the service is updated. This is used after the configuration file of a service was modified, when the service does not need to be restarted.

*status*

Tells if the service is running and with which PIDs.

Feel free to modify the way the boot process works (after all, it is your own LFS system). The files given here are an example of how it can be done.

## 7.4. Device and Module Handling on an LFS System

In Chapter 6, we installed the Udev package. Before we go into the details regarding how this works, a brief history of previous methods of handling devices is in order.

Linux systems in general traditionally use a static device creation method, whereby a great many device nodes are created under `/dev` (sometimes literally thousands of nodes), regardless of whether the corresponding hardware devices actually exist. This is typically done via a **MAKEDEV** script, which contains a number of calls to the **mknod** program with the relevant major and minor device numbers for every possible device that might exist in the world. Using the Udev method, only those devices which are detected by the kernel get device nodes created for them. Because these device nodes will be created each time the system boots, they will be stored on a `tmpfs` file system (a virtual file system that resides entirely in system memory). Device nodes do not require much space, so the memory that is used is negligible.

### 7.4.1. History

In February 2000, a new filesystem called `devfs` was merged into the 2.3.46 kernel and was made available during the 2.4 series of stable kernels. Although it was present in the kernel source itself, this method of creating devices dynamically never received overwhelming support from the core kernel developers.

The main problem with the approach adopted by `devfs` was the way it handled device detection, creation, and naming. The latter issue, that of device node naming, was perhaps the most critical. It is generally accepted that if device names are allowed to be configurable, then the device naming policy should be up to a system administrator, not imposed on them by any particular developer(s). The `devfs` file system also suffers from race conditions that are inherent in its design and cannot be fixed without a substantial revision to the kernel. It has also been marked as deprecated due to a lack of recent maintenance.

With the development of the unstable 2.5 kernel tree, later released as the 2.6 series of stable kernels, a new virtual filesystem called `sysfs` came to be. The job of `sysfs` is to export a view of the system's hardware configuration to userspace processes. With this userspace-visible representation, the possibility of seeing a userspace replacement for `devfs` became much more realistic.

### 7.4.2. Udev Implementation

The `sysfs` filesystem was mentioned briefly above. One may wonder how `sysfs` knows about the devices present on a system and what device numbers should be used for them. Drivers that have been compiled into the kernel directly register their objects with `sysfs` as they are detected by the kernel. For drivers compiled as modules, this registration will happen when the module is loaded. Once the `sysfs` filesystem is mounted (on `/sys`), data which the built-in drivers registered with `sysfs` are available to userspace processes and to **udev** for device node creation.

The **S10udev** initscript takes care of creating these device nodes when Linux is booted. This script starts by registering `/sbin/udevsend` as a hotplug event handler. Hotplug events (discussed below) are not usually generated during this stage, but **udev** is registered just in case they do occur. The **udevstart** program then walks through the `/sys` filesystem and creates devices under `/dev` that match the descriptions. For example, `/sys/class/tty/vcs/dev` contains the string “7:0”. This string is used by **udevstart** to create `/dev/vcs` with major number 7 and minor 0. The names and permissions of the nodes created under the `/dev` directory are configured according to the rules specified in the files within the `/etc/udev/rules.d/` directory. These are numbered in a similar fashion to the LFS-Bootscripts package. If **udev** can't find a rule for the device it is creating, it will default permissions to `660` and ownership to `root:root`.

Once the above stage is complete, all devices that were already present and have compiled-in drivers will be available for use. This leads us to the devices that have modular drivers.

Earlier, we mentioned the concept of a “hotplug event handler.” When a new device connection is detected by the kernel, the kernel will generate a hotplug event and look at the file `/proc/sys/kernel/hotplug` to determine the userspace program that handles the device's connection. The **udev** bootscript registered **udevsend** as this handler. When these hotplug events are generated, the kernel will tell **udev** to check the `/sys` filesystem for the information pertaining to this new device and create the `/dev` entry for it.

This brings us to one problem that exists with **udev**, and likewise with `devfs` before it. It is commonly referred to as the “chicken and egg” problem. Most Linux distributions handle loading modules via entries in `/etc/modules.conf`. Access to a device node causes the appropriate kernel module to load. With **udev**, this method will not work because the device node does not exist until the module is loaded. To solve this, the **S05modules** bootscript was added to the LFS-Bootscripts package, along with the `/etc/sysconfig/modules` file. By adding module names to the `modules` file, these modules will be loaded when the computer starts up. This allows **udev** to detect the devices and create the appropriate device nodes.

Note that on slower machines or for drivers that create a lot of device nodes, the process of creating devices may take a few seconds to complete. This means that some device nodes may not be immediately accessible.

### 7.4.3. Handling Hotpluggable/Dynamic Devices

When you plug in a device, such as a Universal Serial Bus (USB) MP3 player, the kernel recognizes that the device is now connected and generates a hotplug event. If the driver is already loaded (either because it was compiled into the kernel or because it was loaded via the **S05modules** bootscript), **udev** will be called upon to create the relevant device node(s) according to the `sysfs` data available in `/sys`.

If the driver for the just plugged in device is available as a module but currently unloaded, the Hotplug package will load the appropriate module and make this device available by creating the device node(s) for it.

### 7.4.4. Problems with Creating Devices

There are a few known problems when it comes to automatically creating device nodes:

1) A kernel driver may not export its data to `sysfs`.

This is most common with third party drivers from outside the kernel tree. Udev will be unable to automatically create device nodes for such drivers. Use the `/etc/sysconfig/createfiles` configuration file to manually create the devices. Consult the `devices.txt` file inside the kernel documentation or the documentation for that driver to find the proper major/minor numbers.

2) A non-hardware device is required. This is most common with the Advanced Linux Sound Architecture (ALSA) project's Open Sound System (OSS) compatibility module. These types of devices can be handled in one of two ways:

- Adding the module names to `/etc/sysconfig/modules`

- Using an “install” line in `/etc/modprobe.conf`. This tells the **modprobe** command “when loading this module, also load this other module, at the same time.” For example:

```
install snd-pcm modprobe -i snd-pcm ; modprobe \  
    snd-pcm-oss ; true
```

This will cause the system to load both the *snd-pcm* and *snd-pcm-oss* modules when any request is made to load the driver *snd-pcm*.

## 7.4.5. Useful Reading

Additional helpful documentation is available at the following sites:

- A Userspace Implementation of `devfs`  
[http://www.kroah.com/linux/talks/ols\\_2003\\_udev\\_paper/Reprint-Kroah-Hartman-OLS2003.pdf](http://www.kroah.com/linux/talks/ols_2003_udev_paper/Reprint-Kroah-Hartman-OLS2003.pdf)
- udev FAQ  
<http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/kernel/hotplug/udev-FAQ>
- The Linux Kernel Driver Model  
[http://public.planetmirror.com/pub/lca/2003/proceedings/papers/Patrick\\_Mochel/Patrick\\_Mochel.pdf](http://public.planetmirror.com/pub/lca/2003/proceedings/papers/Patrick_Mochel/Patrick_Mochel.pdf)



## 7.5. Configuring the setclock Script

The **setclock** script reads the time from the hardware clock, also known as the BIOS or the Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor (CMOS) clock. If the hardware clock is set to UTC, this script will convert the hardware clock's time to the local time using the `/etc/localtime` file (which tells the **hwclock** program which timezone the user is in). There is no way to detect whether or not the hardware clock is set to UTC, so this needs to be configured manually.

If you cannot remember whether or not the hardware clock is set to UTC, find out by running the **hwclock --localtime --show** command. This will display what the current time is according to the hardware clock. If this time matches whatever your watch says, then the hardware clock is set to local time. If the output from **hwclock** is not local time, chances are it is set to UTC time. Verify this by adding or subtracting the proper amount of hours for the timezone to the time shown by **hwclock**. For example, if you are currently in the MST timezone, which is also known as GMT -0700, add seven hours to the local time.

Change the value of the UTC variable below to a value of 0 (zero) if the hardware clock is *not* set to UTC time.

Create a new file `/etc/sysconfig/clock` by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/sysconfig/clock << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/sysconfig/clock

UTC=1

# End /etc/sysconfig/clock
EOF
```

A good hint explaining how to deal with time on LFS is available at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/time.txt>. It explains issues such as time zones, UTC, and the TZ environment variable.

## 7.6. Configuring the Linux Console

This section discusses how to configure the **console** bootscript that sets up the keyboard map and the console font. If non-ASCII characters (e.g., the British pound sign and Euro character) will not be used and the keyboard is a U.S. one, skip this section. Without the configuration file, the **console** bootscript will do nothing.

The **console** script reads the `/etc/sysconfig/console` file for configuration information. Decide which keymap and screen font will be used. Various language-specific HOWTO's can also help with this (see <http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/HOWTO-INDEX/other-lang.html>). A pre-made `/etc/sysconfig/console` file with known settings for several countries was installed with the LFS-Bootscripts package, so the relevant section can be uncommented if the country is supported. If still in doubt, look in the `/usr/share/kbd` directory for valid keymaps and screen fonts. Read `loadkeys(1)` and `setfont(8)` to determine the correct arguments for these programs. Once decided, create the configuration file with the following command:

```
cat >/etc/sysconfig/console <<"EOF"
KEYMAP="[arguments for loadkeys]"
FONT="[arguments for setfont]"
EOF
```

For example, for Spanish users who also want to use the Euro character (accessible by pressing AltGr+E), the following settings are correct:

```
cat >/etc/sysconfig/console <<"EOF"
KEYMAP="es euro2"
FONT="lat9-16 -u iso01"
EOF
```



### Note

The `FONT` line above is correct only for the ISO 8859-15 character set. If using ISO 8859-1 and, therefore, a pound sign instead of Euro, the correct `FONT` line would be:

```
FONT="lat1-16"
```

If the `KEYMAP` or `FONT` variable is not set, the **console** initscript will not run the corresponding program.

In some keymaps, the Backspace and Delete keys send characters different from ones in the default keymap built into the kernel. This confuses some applications. For example, Emacs displays its help (instead of erasing the character before the cursor) when Backspace is pressed. To check if the keymap in use is affected (this works only for i386 keymaps):

```
zgrep '\W14\W' [ /path/to/your/keymap ]
```

If the keycode 14 is Backspace instead of Delete, create the following keymap snippet to fix this issue:

```
mkdir -p /etc/kbd && cat > /etc/kbd/bs-sends-del <<"EOF"
        keycode 14 = Delete Delete Delete Delete
    alt keycode 14 = Meta_Delete
    altgr alt keycode 14 = Meta_Delete
        keycode 111 = Remove
    altgr control keycode 111 = Boot
    control alt keycode 111 = Boot
altgr control alt keycode 111 = Boot
EOF
```

Tell the **console** script to load this snippet after the main keymap:

```
cat >>/etc/sysconfig/console <<"EOF"
KEYMAP_CORRECTIONS="/etc/kbd/bs-sends-del"
EOF
```

To compile the keymap directly into the kernel instead of setting it every time from the **console** bootscript, follow the instructions given in Section 8.3, “Linux-2.6.11.12.” Doing this ensures that the keyboard will always work as expected, even when booting into maintenance mode (by passing *init=/bin/sh* to the kernel), because the **console** bootscript will not be run in that situation. Additionally, the kernel will not set the screen font automatically. This should not pose many problems because ASCII characters will be handled correctly, and it is unlikely that a user would need to rely on non-ASCII characters while in maintenance mode.

Since the kernel will set up the keymap, it is possible to omit the `KEYMAP` variable from the `/etc/sysconfig/console` configuration file. It can also be left in place, if desired, without consequence. Keeping it could be beneficial if running several different kernels where it is difficult to ensure that the keymap is compiled into every one of them.

## 7.7. Configuring the `sysklogd` script

The `sysklogd` script invokes the `syslogd` program with the `-m 0` option. This option turns off the periodic timestamp mark that `syslogd` writes to the log files every 20 minutes by default. If you want to turn on this periodic timestamp mark, edit the `sysklogd` script and make the changes accordingly. See `man syslogd` for more information.

## 7.8. Creating the `/etc/inputrc` File

The `inputrc` file handles keyboard mapping for specific situations. This file is the startup file used by `Readline` — the input-related library — used by `Bash` and most other shells.

Most people do not need user-specific keyboard mappings so the command below creates a global `/etc/inputrc` used by everyone who logs in. If you later decide you need to override the defaults on a per-user basis, you can create a `.inputrc` file in the user's home directory with the modified mappings.

For more information on how to edit the `inputrc` file, see **info bash** under the *Readline Init File* section. **info readline** is also a good source of information.

Below is a generic global `inputrc` along with comments to explain what the various options do. Note that comments cannot be on the same line as commands. Create the file using the following command:

```
cat > /etc/inputrc << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/inputrc
# Modified by Chris Lynn <roryo@roryo.dynup.net>

# Allow the command prompt to wrap to the next line
set horizontal-scroll-mode Off

# Enable 8bit input
set meta-flag On
set input-meta On

# Turns off 8th bit stripping
set convert-meta Off

# Keep the 8th bit for display
set output-meta On

# none, visible or audible
set bell-style none

# All of the following map the escape sequence of the
# value contained inside the 1st argument to the
# readline specific functions

"\eOd": backward-word
"\eOc": forward-word

# for linux console
"\e[1~": beginning-of-line
"\e[4~": end-of-line
"\e[5~": beginning-of-history
"\e[6~": end-of-history
"\e[3~": delete-char
"\e[2~": quoted-insert

# for xterm
"\eOH": beginning-of-line
"\eOF": end-of-line
```

```
# for Konsole
"\e[H": beginning-of-line
"\e[F": end-of-line

# End /etc/inputrc
EOF
```

## 7.9. The Bash Shell Startup Files

The shell program `/bin/bash` (hereafter referred to as “the shell”) uses a collection of startup files to help create an environment to run in. Each file has a specific use and may affect login and interactive environments differently. The files in the `/etc` directory provide global settings. If an equivalent file exists in the home directory, it may override the global settings.

An interactive login shell is started after a successful login, using `/bin/login`, by reading the `/etc/passwd` file. An interactive non-login shell is started at the command-line (e.g., `[prompt]$/bin/bash`). A non-interactive shell is usually present when a shell script is running. It is non-interactive because it is processing a script and not waiting for user input between commands.

For more information, see **info bash** under the *Bash Startup Files and Interactive Shells* section.

The files `/etc/profile` and `~/.bash_profile` are read when the shell is invoked as an interactive login shell.

The base `/etc/profile` below sets some environment variables necessary for native language support. Setting them properly results in:

- The output of programs translated into the native language
- Correct classification of characters into letters, digits and other classes. This is necessary for **bash** to properly accept non-ASCII characters in command lines in non-English locales
- The correct alphabetical sorting order for the country
- Appropriate default paper size
- Correct formatting of monetary, time, and date values

This script also sets the `INPUTRC` environment variable that makes Bash and Readline use the `/etc/inputrc` file created earlier.

Replace `[LL]` below with the two-letter code for the desired language (e.g., “en”) and `[CC]` with the two-letter code for the appropriate country (e.g., “GB”). `[charmap]` should be replaced with the canonical charmap for your chosen locale.

The list of all locales supported by Glibc can be obtained by running the following command:

```
locale -a
```

Locales can have a number of synonyms, e.g. “ISO-8859-1” is also referred to as “iso8859-1” and “iso88591”. Some applications cannot handle the various synonyms correctly, so it is safest to choose the canonical name for a particular locale. To determine the canonical name, run the following command, where `[locale name]` is the output given by **locale -a** for your preferred locale (“en\_GB.iso88591” in our example).

```
LC_ALL=[locale name] locale charmap
```

For the “en\_GB.iso88591” locale, the above command will print:

```
ISO-8859-1
```

This results in a final locale setting of “en\_GB.ISO-8859-1”.

Once the proper locale settings have been determined, create the `/etc/profile` file:

```
cat > /etc/profile << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/profile

export LANG=[ll]_[CC].[charmap]
export INPUTRC=/etc/inputrc

# End /etc/profile
EOF
```



### Note

The “C” (default) and “en\_US” (the recommended one for United States English users) locales are different.

Setting the keyboard layout, screen font, and locale-related environment variables are the only internationalization steps needed to support locales that use ordinary single-byte encodings and left-to-right writing direction. More complex cases (including UTF-8 based locales) require additional steps and additional patches because many applications tend to not work properly under such conditions. These steps and patches are not included in the LFS book and such locales are not yet supported by LFS.



## 7.10. Configuring the localnet Script

Part of the job of the **localnet** script is setting the system's hostname. This needs to be configured in the `/etc/sysconfig/network` file.

Create the `/etc/sysconfig/network` file and enter a hostname by running:

```
echo "HOSTNAME=[lfs]" > /etc/sysconfig/network
```

`[lfs]` needs to be replaced with the name given to the computer. Do not enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) here. That information will be put in the `/etc/hosts` file in the next section.

## 7.11. Creating the `/etc/hosts` File

If a network card is to be configured, decide on the IP address, FQDN, and possible aliases for use in the `/etc/hosts` file. The syntax is:

```
<IP address> myhost.example.org aliases
```

Unless the computer is to be visible to the Internet (i.e., there is a registered domain and a valid block of assigned IP addresses—most users do not have this), make sure that the IP address is in the private network IP address range. Valid ranges are:

Class	Networks
A	10.0.0.0
B	172.16.0.0 through 172.31.0.255
C	192.168.0.0 through 192.168.255.255

A valid IP address could be 192.168.1.1. A valid FQDN for this IP could be `www.linuxfromscratch.org` (not recommended because this is a valid registered domain address and could cause domain name server issues).

Even if not using a network card, an FQDN is still required. This is necessary for certain programs to operate correctly.

Create the `/etc/hosts` file by running:

```
cat > /etc/hosts << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/hosts (network card version)

127.0.0.1 localhost
[192.168.1.1] [<HOSTNAME>.example.org] [HOSTNAME]

# End /etc/hosts (network card version)
EOF
```

The `[192.168.1.1]` and `[<HOSTNAME>.example.org]` values need to be changed for specific users or requirements (if assigned an IP address by a network/system administrator and the machine will be connected to an existing network).

If a network card is not going to be configured, create the `/etc/hosts` file by running:

```
cat > /etc/hosts << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/hosts (no network card version)

127.0.0.1 [<HOSTNAME>.example.org] [HOSTNAME] localhost

# End /etc/hosts (no network card version)
EOF
```

## 7.12. Configuring the network Script

This section only applies if a network card is to be configured.

If a network card will not be used, there is likely no need to create any configuration files relating to network cards. If that is the case, remove the `network` symlinks from all run-level directories (`/etc/rc.d/rc*.d`).

### 7.12.1. Creating Network Interface Configuration Files

Which interfaces are brought up and down by the network script depends on the files and directories in the `/etc/sysconfig/network-devices` hierarchy. This directory should contain a sub-directory for each interface to be configured, such as `ifconfig.xyz`, where “xyz” is a network interface name. Inside this directory would be files defining the attributes to this interface, such as its IP address(es), subnet masks, and so forth.

The following command creates a sample `ipv4` file for the `eth0` device:

```
cd /etc/sysconfig/network-devices &&
mkdir ifconfig.eth0 &&
cat > ifconfig.eth0/ipv4 << "EOF"
ONBOOT=yes
SERVICE=ipv4-static
IP=192.168.1.1
GATEWAY=192.168.1.2
PREFIX=24
BROADCAST=192.168.1.255
EOF
```

The values of these variables must be changed in every file to match the proper setup. If the `ONBOOT` variable is set to “yes” the network script will bring up the Network Interface Card (NIC) during booting of the system. If set to anything but “yes” the NIC will be ignored by the network script and not be brought up.

The `SERVICE` variable defines the method used for obtaining the IP address. The LFS-Bootscripts package has a modular IP assignment format, and creating additional files in the `/etc/sysconfig/network-devices/services` directory allows other IP assignment methods. This is commonly used for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), which is addressed in the BLFS book.

The `GATEWAY` variable should contain the default gateway IP address, if one is present. If not, then comment out the variable entirely.

The `PREFIX` variable needs to contain the number of bits used in the subnet. Each octet in an IP address is 8 bits. If the subnet's netmask is `255.255.255.0`, then it is using the first three octets (24 bits) to specify the network number. If the netmask is `255.255.255.240`, it would be using the first 28 bits. Prefixes longer than 24 bits are commonly used by DSL and cable-based Internet Service Providers (ISPs). In this example (`PREFIX=24`), the netmask is `255.255.255.0`. Adjust the `PREFIX` variable according to your specific subnet.

## 7.12.2. Creating the `/etc/resolv.conf` File

If the system is going to be connected to the Internet, it will need some means of Domain Name Service (DNS) name resolution to resolve Internet domain names to IP addresses, and vice versa. This is best achieved by placing the IP address of the DNS server, available from the ISP or network administrator, into `/etc/resolv.conf`. Create the file by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/resolv.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/resolv.conf

domain {[Your Domain Name]}
nameserver [IP address of your primary nameserver]
nameserver [IP address of your secondary nameserver]

# End /etc/resolv.conf
EOF
```

Replace `[IP address of the nameserver]` with the IP address of the DNS most appropriate for the setup. There will often be more than one entry (requirements demand secondary servers for fallback capability). If you only need or want one DNS server, remove the second `nameserver` line from the file. The IP address may also be a router on the local network.

## Chapter 8. Making the LFS System Bootable

### 8.1. Introduction

It is time to make the LFS system bootable. This chapter discusses creating an `fstab` file, building a kernel for the new LFS system, and installing the GRUB boot loader so that the LFS system can be selected for booting at startup.

## 8.2. Creating the `/etc/fstab` File

The `/etc/fstab` file is used by some programs to determine where file systems are to be mounted by default, in which order, and which must be checked (for integrity errors) prior to mounting. Create a new file systems table like this:

```
cat > /etc/fstab << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/fstab

# file system  mount-point  type  options  dump  fsck
#              order

/dev/[xxx]    /             [fff] defaults  1      1
/dev/[yyy]    swap         swap  pri=1     0      0
proc         /proc        proc  defaults  0      0
sysfs        /sys         sysfs defaults  0      0
devpts       /dev/pts     devpts gid=4,mode=620 0      0
shm          /dev/shm     tmpfs defaults  0      0
# End /etc/fstab
EOF
```

Replace `[xxx]`, `[yyy]`, and `[fff]` with the values appropriate for the system, for example, `hda2`, `hda5`, and `ext2`. For details on the six fields in this file, see **man 5 `fstab`**.

When using a journalling file system, the `1 1` at the end of the line should be replaced with `0 0` because such a partition does not need to be dumped or checked.

The `/dev/shm` mount point for `tmpfs` is included to allow enabling POSIX-shared memory. The kernel must have the required support built into it for this to work (more about this is in the next section). Please note that very little software currently uses POSIX-shared memory. Therefore, consider the `/dev/shm` mount point optional. For more information, see `Documentation/filesystems/tmpfs.txt` in the kernel source tree.

There are other lines which may be added to the `/etc/fstab` file. One example is a line for USB devices:

```
usbfs          /proc/bus/usb usbfs  devgid=14,devmode=0660 0 0
```

This option will only work if “Support for Host-side USB” and “USB device filesystem” are configured in the kernel. If “Support for Host-side USB” is compiled as a module, then `usbcore` must be listed in `/etc/sysconfig/modules`.

## 8.3. Linux-2.6.11.12

The Linux package contains the Linux kernel.

**Approximate build time:** 4.20 SBU

**Required disk space:** 181 MB

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Findutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Gzip, Make, Modutils, Perl, and Sed

### 8.3.1. Installation of the kernel

Building the kernel involves a few steps—configuration, compilation, and installation. Read the README file in the kernel source tree for alternative methods to the way this book configures the kernel.

Prepare for compilation by running the following command:

```
make mrproper
```

This ensures that the kernel tree is absolutely clean. The kernel team recommends that this command be issued prior to each kernel compilation. Do not rely on the source tree being clean after un-tarring.

If, in Section 7.6, “Configuring the Linux Console,” it was decided to compile the keymap into the kernel, issue the command below:

```
loadkeys -m /usr/share/kbd/keymaps/[path to keymap] > \
drivers/char/defkeymap.c
```

For example, if using a Dutch keyboard, use `/usr/share/kbd/keymaps/i386/qwerty/nl.map.gz`.

Configure the kernel via a menu-driven interface. BLFS has some information regarding particular kernel configuration requirements of packages outside of LFS at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/svn/longindex.html#kernel-config-index>:

```
make menuconfig
```

Alternatively, **make oldconfig** may be more appropriate in some situations. See the README file for more information.

If desired, skip kernel configuration by copying the kernel config file, `.config`, from the host system (assuming it is available) to the unpacked `linux-2.6.11.12` directory. However, we do not recommend this option. It is often better to explore all the configuration menus and create the kernel configuration from scratch.



#### Note

NPTL requires the kernel to be compiled with GCC-3.x, in this case 3.4.3. It is not recommended to compile the kernel with GCC-2.95.x, as this causes failures in the Glibc test suite. Normally, this wouldn't be mentioned as LFS doesn't build GCC-2.95.x. Unfortunately, the kernel documentation is outdated and still claims GCC-2.95.3 is the recommended compiler.

Compile the kernel image and modules:

**make**

If using kernel modules, an `/etc/modprobe.conf` file may be needed. Information pertaining to modules and kernel configuration is located in the kernel documentation in the `linux-2.6.11.12/Documentation` directory. Also, `modprobe.conf(5)` may be of interest.

Be very careful when reading other documentation relating to kernel modules because it usually applies to 2.4.x kernels only. As far as we know, kernel configuration issues specific to Hotplug and Udev are not documented. The problem is that Udev will create a device node only if Hotplug or a user-written script inserts the corresponding module into the kernel, and not all modules are detectable by Hotplug. Note that statements like the one below in the `/etc/modprobe.conf` file do not work with Udev:

```
alias char-major-XXX some-module
```

Because of the complications with Hotplug, Udev, and modules, we strongly recommend starting with a completely non-modular kernel configuration, especially if this is the first time using Udev.

Install the modules, if the kernel configuration uses them:

**make modules\_install**

After kernel compilation is complete, additional steps are required to complete the installation. Some files need to be copied to the `/boot` directory.

The path to the kernel image may vary depending on the platform being used. The following command assumes an x86 architecture:

```
cp arch/i386/boot/bzImage /boot/lfskernel-2.6.11.12
```

`System.map` is a symbol file for the kernel. It maps the function entry points of every function in the kernel API, as well as the addresses of the kernel data structures for the running kernel. Issue the following command to install the map file:

```
cp System.map /boot/System.map-2.6.11.12
```

The kernel configuration file `.config` produced by the **make menuconfig** step above contains all the configuration selections for the kernel that was just compiled. It is a good idea to keep this file for future reference:

```
cp .config /boot/config-2.6.11.12
```



It is important to note that the files in the kernel source directory are not owned by *root*. Whenever a package is unpacked as user *root* (like we did inside *chroot*), the files have the user and group IDs of whatever they were on the packager's computer. This is usually not a problem for any other package to be installed because the source tree is removed after the installation. However, the Linux source tree is often retained for a long time. Because of this, there is a chance that whatever user ID the packager used will be assigned to somebody on the machine. That person would then have write access to the kernel source.

If the kernel source tree is going to be retained, run **chown -R 0:0** on the `linux-2.6.11.12` directory to ensure all files are owned by user *root*.



### Warning

Some kernel documentation recommends creating a symlink from `/usr/src/linux` pointing to the kernel source directory. This is specific to kernels prior to the 2.6 series and *must not* be created on an LFS system as it can cause problems for packages you may wish to build once your base LFS system is complete.

Also, the headers in the system's `include` directory should *always* be the ones against which Glibc was compiled, that is, the ones from the Linux-Libc-Headers package, and therefore, should *never* be replaced by the kernel headers.

## 8.3.2. Contents of Linux

**Installed files:** `config-2.6.11.12`, `lfskernel-2.6.11.12`, and `System.map-2.6.11.12`

### Short Descriptions

<code>config-2.6.11.12</code>	Contains all the configuration selections for the kernel
<code>lfskernel-2.6.11.12</code>	The engine of the Linux system. When turning on the computer, the kernel is the first part of the operating system that gets loaded. It detects and initializes all components of the computer's hardware, then makes these components available as a tree of files to the software and turns a single CPU into a multitasking machine capable of running scores of programs seemingly at the same time
<code>System.map-2.6.11.12</code>	A list of addresses and symbols; it maps the entry points and addresses of all the functions and data structures in the kernel

## 8.4. Making the LFS System Bootable

Your shiny new LFS system is almost complete. One of the last things to do is to ensure that the system can be properly booted. The instructions below apply only to computers of IA-32 architecture, meaning mainstream PCs. Information on “boot loading” for other architectures should be available in the usual resource-specific locations for those architectures.

Boot loading can be a complex area, so a few cautionary words are in order. Be familiar with the current boot loader and any other operating systems present on the hard drive(s) that need to be bootable. Make sure that an emergency boot disk is ready to “rescue” the computer if the computer becomes unusable (un-bootable).

Earlier, we compiled and installed the GRUB boot loader software in preparation for this step. The procedure involves writing some special GRUB files to specific locations on the hard drive. We highly recommend creating a GRUB boot floppy diskette as a backup. Insert a blank floppy diskette and run the following commands:

```
dd if=/boot/grub/stage1 of=/dev/fd0 bs=512 count=1
dd if=/boot/grub/stage2 of=/dev/fd0 bs=512 seek=1
```

Remove the diskette and store it somewhere safe. Now, run the **grub** shell:

```
grub
```

GRUB uses its own naming structure for drives and partitions in the form of  $(hdn,m)$ , where  $n$  is the hard drive number and  $m$  is the partition number, both starting from zero. For example, partition `hda1` is  $(hd0,0)$  to GRUB and `hdb3` is  $(hd1,2)$ . In contrast to Linux, GRUB does not consider CD-ROM drives to be hard drives. For example, if using a CD on `hdb` and a second hard drive on `hdc`, that second hard drive would still be  $(hd1)$ .

Using the above information, determine the appropriate designator for the root partition (or boot partition, if a separate one is used). For the following example, it is assumed that the root (or separate boot) partition is `hda4`.

Tell GRUB where to search for its `stage{1,2}` files. The Tab key can be used everywhere to make GRUB show the alternatives:

```
root (hd0,3)
```



### Warning

The following command will overwrite the current boot loader. Do not run the command if this is not desired, for example, if using a third party boot manager to manage the Master Boot Record (MBR). In this scenario, it would make more sense to install GRUB into the “boot sector” of the LFS partition. In this case, this next command would become `setup (hd0,3)`.

Tell GRUB to install itself into the MBR of `hda`:

```
setup (hd0)
```

If all went well, GRUB will have reported finding its files in `/boot/grub`. That's all there is to it. Quit the **grub** shell:

```
quit
```

Create a “menu list” file defining GRUB's boot menu:

```
cat > /boot/grub/menu.lst << "EOF"
# Begin /boot/grub/menu.lst

# By default boot the first menu entry.
default 0

# Allow 30 seconds before booting the default.
timeout 30

# Use prettier colors.
color green/black light-green/black

# The first entry is for LFS.
title LFS 6.1
root (hd0,3)
kernel /boot/lfskernel-2.6.11.12 root=/dev/hda4
EOF
```

Add an entry for the host distribution if desired. It might look like this:

```
cat >> /boot/grub/menu.lst << "EOF"
title Red Hat
root (hd0,2)
kernel /boot/kernel-2.6.5 root=/dev/hda3
initrd /boot/initrd-2.6.5
EOF
```

If dual-booting Windows, the following entry will allow booting it:

```
cat >> /boot/grub/menu.lst << "EOF"
title Windows
rootnoverify (hd0,0)
chainloader +1
EOF
```

If **info grub** does not provide all necessary material, additional information regarding GRUB is located on its website at: <http://www.gnu.org/software/grub/>.

The FHS stipulates that GRUB's `menu.lst` file should be symlinked to `/etc/grub/menu.lst`. To satisfy this requirement, issue the following command:

```
mkdir /etc/grub &&
ln -s /boot/grub/menu.lst /etc/grub
```

## Chapter 9. The End

### 9.1. The End

Well done! The new LFS system is installed! We wish you much success with your shiny new custom-built Linux system.

It may be a good idea to create an `/etc/lfs-release` file. By having this file, it is very easy for you (and for us if you need to ask for help at some point) to find out which LFS version is installed on the system. Create this file by running:

```
echo 6.1 > /etc/lfs-release
```

## 9.2. Get Counted

Now that you have finished the book, do you want to be counted as an LFS user? Head over to <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/cgi-bin/lfscounter.cgi> and register as an LFS user by entering your name and the first LFS version you have used.

Let's reboot into LFS now.

## 9.3. Rebooting the System

Now that all of the software has been installed, it is time to reboot your computer. However, you should be aware of a few things. The system you have created in this book is quite minimal, and most likely will not have the functionality you would need to be able to continue forward. By installing a few extra packages from the BLFS book while still in our current chroot environment, you can leave yourself in a much better position to continue on once you reboot into your new LFS installation. Installing a text mode web browser, such as Lynx, you can easily view the BLFS book in one virtual terminal, while building packages in another. The GPM package will also allow you to perform copy/paste actions in your virtual terminals. Lastly, if you are in a situation where static IP configuration does not meet your networking requirements, installing packages such as Dhcpcd or PPP at this point might also be useful.

Now that we have said that, lets move on to booting our shiny new LFS installation for the first time! First exit from the chroot environment:

```
logout
```

Then unmount the virtual files systems:

```
umount $LFS/dev/pts  
umount $LFS/dev/shm  
umount $LFS/dev  
umount $LFS/proc  
umount $LFS/sys
```

Unmount the LFS file system itself:

```
umount $LFS
```

If multiple partitions were created, unmount the other partitions before unmounting the main one, like this:

```
umount $LFS/usr  
umount $LFS/home  
umount $LFS
```

Now, reboot the system with:

```
shutdown -r now
```

Assuming the GRUB boot loader was set up as outlined earlier, the menu is set to boot *LFS 6.1* automatically.

When the reboot is complete, the LFS system is ready for use and more software may be added to suit your needs.

## 9.4. What Now?

Thank you for reading this LFS book. We hope that you have found this book helpful and have learned more about the system creation process.

Now that the LFS system is installed, you may be wondering “What next?” To answer that question, we have compiled a list of resources for you.

- Maintenance

Bugs and security notices are reported regularly for all software. Since an LFS system is compiled from source, it is up to you to keep abreast of such reports. There are several online resources that track such reports, some of which are shown below:

- Freshmeat.net (<http://freshmeat.net/>)

Freshmeat can notify you (via email) of new versions of packages installed on your system.

- CERT (Computer Emergency Response Team)

CERT has a mailing list that publishes security alerts concerning various operating systems and applications. Subscription information is available at <http://www.us-cert.gov/cas/signup.html>.

- Bugtraq

Bugtraq is a full-disclosure computer security mailing list. It publishes newly discovered security issues, and occasionally potential fixes for them. Subscription information is available at <http://www.securityfocus.com/archive>.

- Beyond Linux From Scratch

The Beyond Linux From Scratch book covers installation procedures for a wide range of software beyond the scope of the LFS Book. The BLFS project is located at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/>.

- LFS Hints

The LFS Hints are a collection of educational documents submitted by volunteers in the LFS community. The hints are available at <http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/list.html>.

- Mailing lists

There are several LFS mailing lists you may subscribe to if you are in need of help, want to stay current with the latest developments, want to contribute to the project, and more. See Chapter 1 - Mailing Lists for more information.

- The Linux Documentation Project

The goal of The Linux Documentation Project (TLDP) is to collaborate on all of the issues of Linux documentation. The TLDP features a large collection of HOWTOs, guides, and man pages. It is located at <http://www.tldp.org/>.

# Part IV. Appendices



# Appendix A. Acronyms and Terms

<b>ABI</b>	Application Binary Interface
<b>ALFS</b>	Automated Linux From Scratch
<b>ALSA</b>	Advanced Linux Sound Architecture
<b>API</b>	Application Programming Interface
<b>ASCII</b>	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
<b>BIOS</b>	Basic Input/Output System
<b>BLFS</b>	Beyond Linux From Scratch
<b>BSD</b>	Berkeley Software Distribution
<b>chroot</b>	change root
<b>CMOS</b>	Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor
<b>COS</b>	Class Of Service
<b>CPU</b>	Central Processing Unit
<b>CRC</b>	Cyclic Redundancy Check
<b>CVS</b>	Concurrent Versions System
<b>DHCP</b>	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
<b>DNS</b>	Domain Name Service
<b>EGA</b>	Enhanced Graphics Adapter
<b>ELF</b>	Executable and Linkable Format
<b>EOF</b>	End of File
<b>EQN</b>	equation
<b>EVMS</b>	Enterprise Volume Management System
<b>ext2</b>	second extended file system
<b>FAQ</b>	Frequently Asked Questions
<b>FHS</b>	Filesystem Hierarchy Standard
<b>FIFO</b>	First-In, First Out
<b>FQDN</b>	Fully Qualified Domain Name
<b>FTP</b>	File Transfer Protocol
<b>GB</b>	Gibabytes
<b>GCC</b>	GNU Compiler Collection

<b>GID</b>	Group Identifier
<b>GMT</b>	Greenwich Mean Time
<b>GPG</b>	GNU Privacy Guard
<b>HTML</b>	Hypertext Markup Language
<b>IDE</b>	Integrated Drive Electronics
<b>IEEE</b>	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
<b>IO</b>	Input/Output
<b>IP</b>	Internet Protocol
<b>IPC</b>	Inter-Process Communication
<b>IRC</b>	Internet Relay Chat
<b>ISO</b>	International Organization for Standardization
<b>ISP</b>	Internet Service Provider
<b>KB</b>	Kilobytes
<b>LED</b>	Light Emitting Diode
<b>LFS</b>	Linux From Scratch
<b>LSB</b>	Linux Standards Base
<b>MB</b>	Megabytes
<b>MBR</b>	Master Boot Record
<b>MD5</b>	Message Digest 5
<b>NIC</b>	Network Interface Card
<b>NLS</b>	Native Language Support
<b>NNTP</b>	Network News Transport Protocol
<b>NPTL</b>	Native POSIX Threading Library
<b>OSS</b>	Open Sound System
<b>PCH</b>	Pre-Compiled Headers
<b>PCRE</b>	Perl Compatible Regular Expression
<b>PID</b>	Process Identifier
<b>PLFS</b>	Pure Linux From Scratch
<b>PTY</b>	pseudo terminal
<b>QA</b>	Quality Assurance
<b>QOS</b>	Quality Of Service

<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory
<b>RPC</b>	Remote Procedure Call
<b>RTC</b>	Real Time Clock
<b>SBU</b>	Standard Build Unit
<b>SCO</b>	The Santa Cruz Operation
<b>SGR</b>	Select Graphic Rendition
<b>SHA1</b>	Secure-Hash Algorithm 1
<b>SMP</b>	Symmetric Multi-Processor
<b>TLDP</b>	The Linux Documentation Project
<b>TFTP</b>	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
<b>TLS</b>	Thread-Local Storage
<b>UID</b>	User Identifier
<b>umask</b>	user file-creation mask
<b>USB</b>	Universal Serial Bus
<b>UTC</b>	Coordinated Universal Time
<b>UUID</b>	Universally Unique Identifier
<b>VC</b>	Virtual Console
<b>VGA</b>	Video Graphics Array
<b>VT</b>	Virtual Terminal

## Appendix B. Acknowledgments

We would like to thank the following people and organizations for their contributions to the Linux From Scratch Project.

- *Gerard Beekmans* <gerard@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Creator, LFS Project Leader
- *Matthew Burgess* <matthew@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Project Leader, LFS Technical Writer/Editor, LFS Release Manager
- *Archaic* <archaic@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer/Editor, HLFS Project Leader, BLFS Editor, Hints and Patches Project Maintainer
- *Nathan Coulson* <nathan@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS-Bootscripts Maintainer
- *Bruce Dubbs* <bdubbs@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Project Leader
- *Manuel Canales Esparcia* <manuel@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS/BLFS/HLFS XML and XSL Maintainer
- *Jim Gifford* <jim@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, Patches Project Leader
- *Jeremy Huntwork* <jhuntwork@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, LFS LiveCD Maintainer, ALFS Project Leader
- *Anderson Lizardo* <lizardo@linuxfromscratch.org> – Website Backend-Scripts Maintainer
- *Ryan Oliver* <ryan@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Toolchain Maintainer
- *James Robertson* <jwrober@linuxfromscratch.org> – Bugzilla Maintainer
- *Tushar Teredesai* <tushar@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Book Editor, Hints and Patches Project Leader
- Countless other people on the various LFS and BLFS mailing lists who helped make this book possible by giving their suggestions, testing the book, and submitting bug reports, instructions, and their experiences with installing various packages.

### Translators

- *Manuel Canales Esparcia* <macana@lfs-es.com> – Spanish LFS translation project
- *Johan Lenglet* <johan@linuxfromscratch.org> – French LFS translation project
- *Anderson Lizardo* <lizardo@linuxfromscratch.org> – Portuguese LFS translation project
- *Thomas Reitelbach* <tr@erdfunkstelle.de> – German LFS translation project

### Mirror Maintainers

#### North American Mirrors

- *Scott Kveton* <scott@osuosl.org> – lfs.oregonstate.edu mirror
- *Mikhail Pastukhov* <miha@xuy.biz> – lfs.130th.net mirror

- *William Astle* <lost@l-w.net> – ca.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Jeremy Polen* <jpolen@rackspace.com> – us2.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Tim Jackson* <tim@idge.net> – linuxfromscratch.idge.net mirror
- *Jeremy Utley* <jeremy@linux-phreak.net> – lfs.linux-phreak.net mirror

## South American Mirrors

- *Andres Meggianto* <sysop@mesi.com.ar> – lfs.mesi.com.ar mirror
- *Manuel Canales Esparcia* <manuel@linuxfromscratch.org> – lfsmirror.lfs-es.info mirror
- *Eduardo B. Fonseca* <ebf@aedsolucoes.com.br> – br.linuxfromscratch.org mirror

## European Mirrors

- *Barna Koczka* <barna@siker.hu> – hu.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *UK Mirror Service* – linuxfromscratch.mirror.ac.uk mirror
- *Martin Voss* <Martin.Voss@ada.de> – lfs.linux-matrix.net mirror
- *Guido Passet* <guido@primerelay.net> – nl.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Bastiaan Jacques* <baafie@planet.nl> – lfs.pagefault.net mirror
- *Roel Neefs* <lfs-mirror@linuxfromscratch.rave.org> – linuxfromscratch.rave.org mirror
- *Justin Knierim* <justin@jrknierim.de> – www.lfs-matrix.de mirror
- *Stephan Brendel* <stevie@stevie20.de> – lfs.netservice-neuss.de mirror
- *Antonin Sprinzl* <Antonin.Sprinzl@tuwien.ac.at> – at.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Fredrik Danerklint* <fredan-lfs@fredan.org> – se.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Parisian sysadmins* <archive@doc.cs.univ-paris8.fr> – www2.fr.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Alexander Velin* <velin@zadnik.org> – bg.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Dirk Webster* <dirk@securewebservices.co.uk> – lfs.securewebservices.co.uk mirror
- *Thomas Skyt* <thomas@sofagang.dk> – dk.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Simon Nicoll* <sime@dot-sime.com> – uk.linuxfromscratch.org mirror

## Asian Mirrors

- *Pui Yong* <pyng@spam.averse.net> – sg.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- *Stuart Harris* <stuart@althalus.me.uk> – lfs.mirror.intermedia.com.sg mirror

## Australian Mirrors

- *Jason Andrade* <jason@dstc.edu.au> – au.linuxfromscratch.org mirror

## Former Project Team Members

- *Christine Barczak* <theladyskye@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Book Editor
- *Jeroen Coumans* <jeroen@linuxfromscratch.org> – Website Developer, FAQ Maintainer
- *Nicholas Leippe* <nicholas@linuxfromscratch.org> – Wiki Maintainer
- *Scot Mc Pherson* <scot@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS NNTP Gateway Maintainer
- *Alexander Patrakov* <semzx@newmail.ru> – LFS Technical Writer
- *Jeremy Utley* <jeremy@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, Bugzilla Maintainer, LFS-Bootscripts Maintainer
- *Zack Winkles* <zwinkles@gmail.com> – Former LFS Technical Writer

## A very special thank you to our donators

- *Dean Benson* <dean@vipersoft.co.uk> for several monetary contributions
- *Hagen Herrschaft* <hrx@hrxnet.de> for donating a 2.2 GHz P4 system, now running under the name of Lorien
- *VA Software* who, on behalf of *Linux.com*, donated a VA Linux 420 (former StartX SP2) workstation
- Mark Stone for donating Belgarath, the linuxfromscratch.org server

# Index

## Packages

Autoconf: 158  
 Automake: 160  
 Bash: 162  
   tools: 87  
 Binutils: 115  
   tools, pass 1: 53  
   tools, pass 2: 71  
 Bison: 140  
   tools: 89  
 Bootscripts: 210  
   usage: 212  
 Bzip2: 166  
   tools: 75  
 Coreutils: 121  
   tools: 74  
 DejaGNU: 67  
 Diffutils: 168  
   tools: 77  
 E2fsprogs: 171  
 Expect: 65  
 File: 164  
 Findutils: 130  
   tools: 78  
 Flex: 146  
   tools: 90  
 Gawk: 131  
   tools: 73  
 GCC: 118  
   tools, pass 1: 55  
   tools, pass 2: 68  
 Gettext: 148  
   tools: 82  
 Glibc: 107  
   tools: 58  
 Grep: 174  
   tools: 80  
 Groff: 142  
 GRUB: 175  
   configuring: 234  
 Gzip: 177  
   tools: 76  
 Hotplug: 179  
 Iana-Etc: 129  
 Inetutils: 150

IPRoute2: 152  
 Kbd: 169  
 Less: 141  
 Libtool: 165  
 Linux: 231  
 Linux-Libc-Headers: 105  
   tools, headers: 57  
 M4: 139  
   tools: 88  
 Make: 183  
   tools: 79  
 Man: 181  
 Man-pages: 106  
 Mktmp: 128  
 Module-Init-Tools: 184  
 Ncurses: 132  
   tools: 83  
 Patch: 186  
   tools: 84  
 Perl: 154  
   tools: 92  
 Procps: 187  
 Psmisc: 189  
 Readline: 134  
 Sed: 145  
   tools: 81  
 Shadow: 191  
   configuring: 192  
 Sysklogd: 194  
   configuring: 194  
 Sysvinit: 196  
   configuring: 197  
 Tar: 199  
   tools: 85  
 Tcl: 63  
 Texinfo: 156  
   tools: 86  
 Udev: 200  
   usage: 214  
 Util-linux: 202  
   tools: 91  
 Vim: 136  
 Zlib: 126

## Programs

a2p: 154 , 154  
 acinstall: 160 , 160  
 aclocal: 160 , 160  
 aclocal-1.9.5: 160 , 160

addftinfo: 142 , 142  
 addr2line: 115 , 116  
 afmtodit: 142 , 142  
 agetty: 202 , 203  
 apropos: 181 , 182  
 ar: 115 , 116  
 arch: 202 , 203  
 as: 115 , 116  
 autoconf: 158 , 158  
 autoheader: 158 , 158  
 autom4te: 158 , 158  
 automake: 160 , 160  
 automake-1.9.5: 160 , 160  
 autopoint: 148 , 148  
 autoreconf: 158 , 158  
 autoscan: 158 , 158  
 autoupdate: 158 , 158  
 awk: 131 , 131  
 badblocks: 171 , 172  
 basename: 121 , 122  
 bash: 162 , 163  
 bashbug: 162 , 163  
 bigram: 130 , 130  
 bison: 140 , 140  
 blkid: 171 , 172  
 blockdev: 202 , 203  
 bunzip2: 166 , 166  
 bzcat: 166 , 166  
 bzcmp: 166 , 167  
 bzdiff: 166 , 167  
 bzegrep: 166 , 167  
 bzfgrep: 166 , 167  
 bzgrep: 166 , 167  
 bzip2: 166 , 167  
 bzip2recover: 166 , 167  
 bzless: 166 , 167  
 bzmores: 166 , 167  
 c++: 118 , 119  
 c++filt: 115 , 116  
 c2ph: 154 , 154  
 cal: 202 , 203  
 captinfo: 132 , 133  
 cat: 121 , 122  
 catchsegv: 107 , 111  
 cc: 118 , 119  
 cfdisk: 202 , 203  
 chage: 191 , 192  
 chatr: 171 , 172  
 chfn: 191 , 192  
 chgrp: 121 , 122  
 chkdupexe: 202 , 203  
 chmod: 121 , 122  
 chown: 121 , 122  
 chpasswd: 191 , 192  
 chroot: 121 , 122  
 chsh: 191 , 192  
 chvt: 169 , 169  
 cksum: 121 , 122  
 clear: 132 , 133  
 cmp: 168 , 168  
 code: 130 , 130  
 col: 202 , 203  
 colcrt: 202 , 203  
 colrm: 202 , 203  
 column: 202 , 203  
 comm: 121 , 122  
 compile: 160 , 160  
 compile\_et: 171 , 172  
 compress: 177 , 177  
 config.charset: 148 , 148  
 config.guess: 160 , 160  
 config.rpath: 148 , 148  
 config.sub: 160 , 160  
 cp: 121 , 122  
 cpp: 118 , 119  
 csplit: 121 , 122  
 ctrlaltdel: 202 , 203  
 ctstat: 152 , 152  
 cut: 121 , 122  
 cytune: 202 , 203  
 date: 121 , 122  
 dd: 121 , 122  
 ddate: 202 , 203  
 deallocvt: 169 , 169  
 debugfs: 171 , 172  
 depcomp: 160 , 161  
 depmod: 184 , 184  
 df: 121 , 123  
 diff: 168 , 168  
 diff3: 168 , 168  
 dir: 121 , 123  
 dircolors: 121 , 123  
 dirname: 121 , 123  
 dmesg: 202 , 203  
 dprofpp: 154 , 155  
 du: 121 , 123  
 dumpe2fs: 171 , 172  
 dumpkeys: 169 , 169



e2fsck: 171 , 172  
 e2image: 171 , 172  
 e2label: 171 , 172  
 echo: 121 , 123  
 efm\_filter.pl: 136 , 137  
 efm\_perl.pl: 136 , 137  
 egrep: 174 , 174  
 elisp-comp: 160 , 161  
 elvtune: 202 , 203  
 en2cxs: 154 , 155  
 env: 121 , 123  
 envsubst: 148 , 148  
 eqn: 142 , 142  
 eqn2graph: 142 , 142  
 ex: 136 , 137  
 expand: 121 , 123  
 expect: 65 , 66  
 expiry: 191 , 192  
 expr: 121 , 123  
 factor: 121 , 123  
 faillog: 191 , 192  
 false: 121 , 123  
 fdformat: 202 , 203  
 fdisk: 202 , 203  
 fgconsole: 169 , 169  
 fgrep: 174 , 174  
 file: 164 , 164  
 find: 130 , 130  
 find2perl: 154 , 155  
 findfs: 171 , 172  
 flex: 146 , 147  
 flex++: 146 , 147  
 fmt: 121 , 123  
 fold: 121 , 123  
 frcode: 130 , 130  
 free: 187 , 187  
 fsck: 171 , 172  
 fsck.cramfs: 202 , 203  
 fsck.ext2: 171 , 172  
 fsck.ext3: 171 , 172  
 fsck.minix: 202 , 203  
 ftp: 150 , 151  
 fuser: 189 , 189  
 g++: 118 , 119  
 gawk: 131 , 131  
 gawk-3.1.4: 131 , 131  
 gcc: 118 , 119  
 gccbug: 118 , 119  
 gcov: 118 , 119  
 gencat: 107 , 111  
 geqn: 142 , 142  
 getconf: 107 , 111  
 getent: 107 , 111  
 getkeycodes: 169 , 169  
 getopt: 202 , 203  
 gettext: 148 , 148  
 gettextize: 148 , 148  
 getunimap: 169 , 169  
 gpasswd: 191 , 192  
 gprof: 115 , 116  
 grcat: 131 , 131  
 grep: 174 , 174  
 grn: 142 , 142  
 grodvi: 142 , 143  
 groff: 142 , 143  
 groffer: 142 , 143  
 grog: 142 , 143  
 grolbp: 142 , 143  
 grolj4: 142 , 143  
 groups: 142 , 143  
 grotty: 142 , 143  
 groupadd: 191 , 193  
 groupdel: 191 , 193  
 groupmod: 191 , 193  
 groups: 191 , 193  
 groups: 121 , 123  
 grpck: 191 , 193  
 grpconv: 191 , 193  
 grpunconv: 191 , 193  
 grub: 175 , 175  
 grub-install: 175 , 175  
 grub-md5-crypt: 175 , 175  
 grub-terminfo: 175 , 176  
 gtbl: 142 , 143  
 gunzip: 177 , 177  
 gzexe: 177 , 178  
 gzip: 177 , 178  
 h2ph: 154 , 155  
 h2xs: 154 , 155  
 halt: 196 , 198  
 head: 121 , 123  
 hexdump: 202 , 203  
 hostid: 121 , 123  
 hostname: 121 , 123  
 hostname: 148 , 148  
 hotplug: 179 , 180  
 hpftodit: 142 , 143  
 hwclock: 202 , 203

iconv: 107 , 111  
 iconvconfig: 107 , 111  
 id: 121 , 123  
 ifcfg: 152 , 152  
 ifnames: 158 , 159  
 ifstat: 152 , 152  
 igawk: 131 , 131  
 indxbib: 142 , 143  
 info: 156 , 157  
 infocmp: 132 , 133  
 infokey: 156 , 157  
 infotocap: 132 , 133  
 init: 196 , 198  
 insmod: 184 , 184  
 insmod.static: 184 , 184  
 install: 121 , 123  
 install-info: 156 , 157  
 install-sh: 160 , 161  
 ip: 152 , 153  
 ipcrm: 202 , 203  
 ipcs: 202 , 204  
 isosize: 202 , 204  
 join: 121 , 123  
 kbdrate: 169 , 169  
 kbd\_mode: 169 , 169  
 kill: 187 , 187  
 killall: 189 , 189  
 killall5: 196 , 198  
 klogd: 194 , 195  
 last: 196 , 198  
 lastb: 196 , 198  
 lastlog: 191 , 193  
 ld: 115 , 116  
 ldconfig: 107 , 111  
 ldd: 107 , 111  
 lddlibc4: 107 , 111  
 less: 141 , 141  
 less.sh: 136 , 138  
 lessecho: 141 , 141  
 lesskey: 141 , 141  
 lex: 146 , 147  
 lfskernel-2.6.11.12: 231 , 233  
 libnetcfg: 154 , 155  
 libtool: 165 , 165  
 libtoolize: 165 , 165  
 line: 202 , 204  
 link: 121 , 123  
 lkbib: 142 , 143  
 ln: 121 , 123  
 lnstat: 152 , 153  
 loadkeys: 169 , 169  
 loadunimap: 169 , 169  
 locale: 107 , 111  
 localedef: 107 , 111  
 locate: 130 , 130  
 logger: 202 , 204  
 login: 191 , 193  
 logname: 121 , 123  
 logoutd: 191 , 193  
 logsave: 171 , 172  
 look: 202 , 204  
 lookbib: 142 , 143  
 losetup: 202 , 204  
 ls: 121 , 123  
 lsattr: 171 , 172  
 lsmmod: 184 , 185  
 m4: 139 , 139  
 make: 183 , 183  
 makeinfo: 156 , 157  
 makewhatis: 181 , 182  
 man: 181 , 182  
 man2dvi: 181 , 182  
 man2html: 181 , 182  
 mapscrn: 169 , 170  
 mbchk: 175 , 176  
 mcookie: 202 , 204  
 md5sum: 121 , 123  
 mdate-sh: 160 , 161  
 mesg: 196 , 198  
 missing: 160 , 161  
 mkdir: 121 , 123  
 mke2fs: 171 , 172  
 mkfifo: 121 , 123  
 mkfs: 202 , 204  
 mkfs.bfs: 202 , 204  
 mkfs.cramfs: 202 , 204  
 mkfs.ext2: 171 , 173  
 mkfs.ext3: 171 , 173  
 mkfs.minix: 202 , 204  
 mkinstalldirs: 160 , 161  
 mklost+found: 171 , 173  
 mknod: 121 , 123  
 mkpasswd: 191 , 193  
 mkswap: 202 , 204  
 mktemp: 128 , 128  
 mk\_cmds: 171 , 172  
 mmroff: 142 , 143  
 modinfo: 184 , 185

modprobe: 184 , 185  
 more: 202 , 204  
 mount: 202 , 204  
 mountpoint: 196 , 198  
 msgattrib: 148 , 149  
 msgcat: 148 , 149  
 msgcmp: 148 , 149  
 msgcomm: 148 , 149  
 msgconv: 148 , 149  
 msgen: 148 , 149  
 msgexec: 148 , 149  
 msgfilter: 148 , 149  
 msgfmt: 148 , 149  
 msggrep: 148 , 149  
 msginit: 148 , 149  
 msgmerge: 148 , 149  
 msgunfmt: 148 , 149  
 msguniq: 148 , 149  
 mtrace: 107 , 111  
 mv: 121 , 124  
 mve.awk: 136 , 138  
 namei: 202 , 204  
 neqn: 142 , 143  
 newgrp: 191 , 193  
 newusers: 191 , 193  
 ngettext: 148 , 149  
 nice: 121 , 124  
 nl: 121 , 124  
 nm: 115 , 116  
 nohup: 121 , 124  
 nroff: 142 , 143  
 nscd: 107 , 111  
 nscd\_nischeck: 107 , 111  
 nstat: 152 , 153  
 objcopy: 115 , 116  
 objdump: 115 , 116  
 od: 121 , 124  
 openvt: 169 , 170  
 passwd: 191 , 193  
 paste: 121 , 124  
 patch: 186 , 186  
 pathchk: 121 , 124  
 pcprofiledump: 107 , 111  
 perl: 154 , 155  
 perl5.8.6: 154 , 155  
 perlbug: 154 , 155  
 perlcc: 154 , 155  
 perldoc: 154 , 155  
 perlvp: 154 , 155  
 pfbtops: 142 , 143  
 pg: 202 , 204  
 pgawk: 131 , 131  
 pgawk-3.1.4: 131 , 131  
 pgrep: 187 , 187  
 pic: 142 , 143  
 pic2graph: 142 , 143  
 piconv: 154 , 155  
 pidof: 196 , 198  
 ping: 150 , 151  
 pinky: 121 , 124  
 pivot\_root: 202 , 204  
 pkill: 187 , 187  
 pl2pm: 154 , 155  
 pltags.pl: 136 , 138  
 pmap: 187 , 187  
 pod2html: 154 , 155  
 pod2latex: 154 , 155  
 pod2man: 154 , 155  
 pod2text: 154 , 155  
 pod2usage: 154 , 155  
 podchecker: 154 , 155  
 podselect: 154 , 155  
 post-grohtml: 142 , 143  
 poweroff: 196 , 198  
 pr: 121 , 124  
 pre-grohtml: 142 , 143  
 printenv: 121 , 124  
 printf: 121 , 124  
 ps: 187 , 187  
 psed: 154 , 155  
 psfaddtable: 169 , 170  
 psfgettable: 169 , 170  
 psfstrietable: 169 , 170  
 psfxtable: 169 , 170  
 pstree: 189 , 190  
 pstree.x11: 189 , 190  
 pstruct: 154 , 155  
 ptx: 121 , 124  
 pt\_chown: 107 , 111  
 pwcat: 131 , 131  
 pwck: 191 , 193  
 pwconv: 191 , 193  
 pwd: 121 , 124  
 pwunconv: 191 , 193  
 py-compile: 160 , 161  
 ramsize: 202 , 204  
 ranlib: 115 , 116  
 raw: 202 , 204

rcp: 150 , 151  
rdev: 202 , 204  
readelf: 115 , 116  
readlink: 121 , 124  
readprofile: 202 , 204  
reboot: 196 , 198  
ref: 136 , 138  
refer: 142 , 143  
rename: 202 , 204  
renice: 202 , 204  
reset: 132 , 133  
resize2fs: 171 , 173  
resizecons: 169 , 170  
rev: 202 , 204  
rlogin: 150 , 151  
rm: 121 , 124  
rmdir: 121 , 124  
rmmod: 184 , 185  
rmt: 199 , 199  
rootflags: 202 , 204  
routef: 152 , 153  
routel: 152 , 153  
rpcgen: 107 , 111  
rpcinfo: 107 , 111  
rsh: 150 , 151  
rtacct: 152 , 153  
rtmon: 152 , 153  
rtpr: 152 , 153  
rtstat: 152 , 153  
runlevel: 196 , 198  
runttest: 67 , 67  
rview: 136 , 138  
rvim: 136 , 138  
s2p: 154 , 155  
script: 202 , 204  
sdiff: 168 , 168  
sed: 145 , 145  
seq: 121 , 124  
setfdprm: 202 , 204  
setfont: 169 , 170  
setkeycodes: 169 , 170  
setleds: 169 , 170  
setlogcons: 169 , 170  
setmetamode: 169 , 170  
setsid: 202 , 204  
setterm: 202 , 204  
setvesablank: 169 , 170  
sfdisk: 202 , 204  
sg: 191 , 193  
sh: 162 , 163  
shasum: 121 , 124  
showconsolefont: 169 , 170  
showkey: 169 , 170  
shred: 121 , 124  
shtags.pl: 136 , 138  
shutdown: 196 , 198  
size: 115 , 117  
skill: 187 , 187  
sleep: 121 , 124  
sln: 107 , 111  
snice: 187 , 187  
soelim: 142 , 143  
sort: 121 , 124  
splain: 154 , 155  
split: 121 , 124  
sprof: 107 , 111  
ss: 152 , 153  
stat: 121 , 124  
strings: 115 , 117  
strip: 115 , 117  
stty: 121 , 124  
su: 191 , 193  
sulogin: 196 , 198  
sum: 121 , 124  
swapdev: 202 , 204  
swapoff: 202 , 205  
swapon: 202 , 205  
symlink-tree: 160 , 161  
sync: 121 , 124  
sysctl: 187 , 187  
syslogd: 194 , 195  
tac: 121 , 124  
tack: 132 , 133  
tail: 121 , 124  
talk: 150 , 151  
tar: 199 , 199  
tbl: 142 , 144  
tc: 152 , 153  
tclsh: 63 , 64  
tclsh8.4: 63 , 64  
tcltags: 136 , 138  
tee: 121 , 124  
telinit: 196 , 198  
telnet: 150 , 151  
tempfile: 128 , 128  
test: 121 , 124  
texi2dvi: 156 , 157  
texindex: 156 , 157

tfmtodit: 142 , 144  
 tftp: 150 , 151  
 tic: 132 , 133  
 tload: 187 , 187  
 toe: 132 , 133  
 top: 187 , 187  
 touch: 121 , 125  
 tput: 132 , 133  
 tr: 121 , 125  
 troff: 142 , 144  
 true: 121 , 125  
 tset: 132 , 133  
 tsort: 121 , 125  
 tty: 121 , 125  
 tune2fs: 171 , 173  
 tunelp: 202 , 205  
 tzselect: 107 , 111  
 udev: 200 , 200  
 udevd: 200 , 200  
 udevinfo: 200 , 201  
 udevsend: 200 , 200  
 udevstart: 200 , 200  
 udevtest: 200 , 201  
 ul: 202 , 205  
 umount: 202 , 205  
 uname: 121 , 125  
 uncompress: 177 , 178  
 unexpand: 121 , 125  
 unicode\_start: 169 , 170  
 unicode\_stop: 169 , 170  
 uniq: 121 , 125  
 unlink: 121 , 125  
 updatedb: 130 , 130  
 uptime: 187 , 187  
 useradd: 191 , 193  
 userdel: 191 , 193  
 usermod: 191 , 193  
 users: 121 , 125  
 utmpdump: 196 , 198  
 uuidgen: 171 , 173  
 vdir: 121 , 125  
 vi: 136 , 138  
 vidmode: 202 , 205  
 view: 136 , 138  
 vigr: 191 , 193  
 vim: 136 , 138  
 vim132: 136 , 138  
 vim2html.pl: 136 , 138  
 vimdiff: 136 , 138

vim: 136 , 138  
 vimspell.sh: 136 , 138  
 vimtutor: 136 , 138  
 vipw: 191 , 193  
 vmstat: 187 , 187  
 w: 187 , 188  
 wall: 196 , 198  
 watch: 187 , 188  
 wc: 121 , 125  
 whatis: 181 , 182  
 whereis: 202 , 205  
 who: 121 , 125  
 whoami: 121 , 125  
 write: 202 , 205  
 xargs: 130 , 130  
 xgettext: 148 , 149  
 xsubpp: 154 , 155  
 xtrace: 107 , 111  
 xxd: 136 , 138  
 yacc: 140 , 140  
 yes: 121 , 125  
 ylwrap: 160 , 161  
 zcat: 177 , 178  
 zcmp: 177 , 178  
 zdiff: 177 , 178  
 zdump: 107 , 111  
 zegrep: 177 , 178  
 zfgrep: 177 , 178  
 zforce: 177 , 178  
 zgrep: 177 , 178  
 zic: 107 , 111  
 zless: 177 , 178  
 zmore: 177 , 178  
 znew: 177 , 178  
 zsoelim: 142 , 144

## Libraries

ld.so: 107 , 111  
 libanl: 107 , 112  
 libasprintf: 148 , 149  
 libbfd: 115 , 117  
 libblkid: 171 , 173  
 libBrokenLocale: 107 , 111  
 libbsd-compat: 107 , 112  
 libbz2\*: 166 , 167  
 libc: 107 , 112  
 libcom\_err: 171 , 173  
 libcrypt: 107 , 112  
 libcurses: 132 , 133

libdl: 107 , 112  
 libe2p: 171 , 173  
 libexpect-5.42: 65 , 66  
 libext2fs: 171 , 173  
 libfl.a: 146 , 147  
 libform: 132 , 133  
 libg: 107 , 112  
 libgcc\*: 118 , 119  
 libgettextlib: 148 , 149  
 libgettextpo: 148 , 149  
 libgettextsrc: 148 , 149  
 libhistory: 134 , 135  
 libiberty: 115 , 117  
 libieee: 107 , 112  
 libltdl: 165 , 165  
 libm: 107 , 112  
 libmagic: 164 , 164  
 libmcheck: 107 , 112  
 libmemusage: 107 , 112  
 libmenu: 132 , 133  
 libncurses: 132 , 133  
 libnsl: 107 , 112  
 libnss: 107 , 112  
 libopcodes: 115 , 117  
 libpanel: 132 , 133  
 libpcprofile: 107 , 112  
 libproc: 187 , 188  
 libpthread: 107 , 112  
 libreadline: 134 , 135  
 libresolv: 107 , 112  
 librpcsvc: 107 , 112  
 librt: 107 , 112  
 libSegFault: 107 , 111  
 libshadow: 191 , 193  
 libss: 171 , 173  
 libstdc++: 118 , 119  
 libsupc++: 118 , 120  
 libtcl8.4.so: 63 , 64  
 libthread\_db: 107 , 112  
 libutil: 107 , 112  
 libuuid: 171 , 173  
 liby.a: 140 , 140  
 libz: 126 , 127

## Scripts

/etc/hotplug/\*.agent: 179 , 180  
 /etc/hotplug/\*.rc: 179 , 180  
 checkfs: 210 , 210  
 cleanfs: 210 , 210

console: 210 , 210  
   configuring: 218  
 functions: 210 , 210  
 halt: 210 , 210  
 hotplug: 210 , 210  
 ifdown: 210 , 210  
 ifup: 210 , 210  
 localnet: 210 , 210  
   /etc/hosts: 226  
   configuring: 225  
 mountfs: 210 , 210  
 mountkernfs: 210 , 210  
 network: 210 , 210  
   /etc/hosts: 226  
   configuring: 227  
 rc: 210 , 210  
 reboot: 210 , 210  
 sendsignals: 210 , 211  
 setclock: 210 , 211  
   configuring: 217  
 static: 210 , 211  
 swap: 210 , 211  
 syslogd: 210 , 211  
   configuring: 220  
 template: 210 , 211  
 udev: 210 , 211

## Others

/boot/config-2.6.11.12: 231 , 233  
 /boot/System.map-2.6.11.12: 231 , 233  
 /dev/\*: 103  
 /etc/fstab: 230  
 /etc/group: 101  
 /etc/hosts: 226  
 /etc/hotplug.d: 179 , 180  
 /etc/hotplug/blacklist: 179 , 180  
 /etc/hotplug/hotplug.functions: 179 , 180  
 /etc/hotplug/usb.usermap: 179 , 180  
 /etc/hotplug/{pci,usb}: 179 , 180  
 /etc/inittab: 197  
 /etc/inputrc: 221  
 /etc/l.d.so.conf: 110  
 /etc/lfs-release: 236  
 /etc/limits: 191  
 /etc/localtime: 109  
 /etc/login.access: 191  
 /etc/login.defs: 191  
 /etc/nsswitch.conf: 109  
 /etc/passwd: 101

/etc/profile: 223  
/etc/protocols: 129  
/etc/resolv.conf: 228  
/etc/services: 129  
/etc/syslog.conf: 194  
/etc/udev: 200 , 201  
/etc/vim: 137  
/lib/firmware: 179 , 180  
/usr/include/{asm,linux}/\*.h: 105 , 105  
/var/log/btmp: 101  
/var/log/hotplug/events: 179 , 180  
/var/log/lastlog: 101  
/var/log/wtmp: 101  
/var/run/utmp: 101  
man pages: 106 , 106